

¹ Observation of the Higgs boson in the WW^*
² channel and search for Higgs boson pair
³ production in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel with the
⁴ ATLAS detector

⁵ A DISSERTATION PRESENTED
⁶ BY
⁷ TOMO LAZOVICH
⁸ TO
⁹ THE DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS

¹⁰ IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS
¹¹ FOR THE DEGREE OF
¹² DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY
¹³ IN THE SUBJECT OF
¹⁴ PHYSICS

¹⁵ HARVARD UNIVERSITY
¹⁶ CAMBRIDGE, MASSACHUSETTS
¹⁷ MAY 2016

¹⁸ ©2016 – TOMO LAZOVICH

¹⁹ ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

20 **Observation of the Higgs boson in the WW^* channel and search
 21 for Higgs boson pair production in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel with the
 22 ATLAS detector**

23 ABSTRACT

24 This dissertation presents two studies: the observation and measurement of the Higgs boson in the
 25 $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ channel at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV and $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV and a search for Higgs pair pro-
 26 duction in the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector in pp collisions at the
 27 Large Hadron Collider.

28 First, the discovery of a particle consistent with the Higgs in 4.8 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV and 5.8 fb^{-1} at
 29 $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV is discussed. Then, the measurement of the Higgs boson signal strength and cross section
 30 in both the gluon fusion and vector boson fusion (VBF) production modes using 20.3 fb^{-1} of $\sqrt{s} =$
 31 8 TeV data combined with 4.8 fb^{-1} of 7 TeV data is shown. The combined signal strength is measured
 32 to be $\mu = 1.09^{+0.23}_{-0.21}$. The total observed significance of the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ process is observed to be
 33 6.1σ (with 5.8σ expected). Advanced methods for background reduction and estimation, particularly in
 34 same-flavor lepton final states, are shown. The VBF signal strength is measured to be $\mu_{\text{VBF}} = 1.27^{+0.53}_{-0.45}$
 35 with an observed significance of 3.2σ (with 2.7σ expected). In the VBF channel, a selection requirement
 36 based method, the precursor to the final multivariate technique used for the result, is detailed.

37 Finally, a search for Higgs pair production in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state with 3.2 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV
 38 is presented. A particular focus is placed on a tailored signal region for resonant production of Higgs
 39 pairs at high masses, utilizing novel techniques in object reconstruction to increase signal acceptance in
 40 boosted final state topologies. No significant excesses are observed, and upper limits on cross sections are
 41 placed for spin-2 Randall Sundrum gravitons (RSG) and narrow spin-0 resonances. The cross section of
 42 $\sigma(pp \rightarrow G_{\text{KK}}^* \rightarrow hh \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b})$ with $k/\bar{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ is constrained to be less than 70 fb for masses in the
 43 range $600 < m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} < 3000 \text{ GeV}$. For the RSG model with $k/\bar{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 2$, cross sections limits between
 44 40 fb and 200 fb are set for the mass range of $500 < m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} < 3000 \text{ GeV}$. The cross section upper
 45 limits for $\sigma(pp \rightarrow H \rightarrow hh \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b})$ ranges from 30 to 300 fb in the mass range of $500 < m_H <$
 46 3000 GeV .

Contents

47

48	o INTRODUCTION	I
49	I Theoretical and Experimental Background	5
50	I.1 THE PHYSICS OF THE HIGGS BOSON	6
51	I.1.1 The Standard Model of Particle Physics	6
52	I.1.2 Electroweak Symmetry Breaking and the Higgs	8
53	I.1.3 Higgs Boson Production and Decay	II
54	I.1.4 Higgs Pair Production in the Standard Model	15
55	I.1.5 Higgs Pair Production in Theories Beyond the Standard Model	16
56	I.1.6 Conclusion	21
57	2 THE ATLAS DETECTOR AND THE LARGE HADRON COLLIDER	22
58	2.1 The Large Hadron Collider	23
59	2.2 The ATLAS Detector	25
60	2.3 The ATLAS Muon New Small Wheel Upgrade	36
61	2.4 Object Reconstruction in ATLAS	40
62	II Observation and measurement of Higgs boson decays to WW^* in LHC	
63	Run I at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ and 8 TeV	49
64	3 $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ ANALYSIS STRATEGY	50
65	3.1 Introduction	50
66	3.2 The $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ signal in ATLAS	51
67	3.3 Background processes	52
68	3.4 Shared signal region selection requirements	56
69	3.5 Background reduction in same-flavor final states	58
70	3.6 Parameters of interest and statistical treatment	64
71	4 THE DISCOVERY OF THE HIGGS BOSON AND THE ROLE OF THE $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ CHANNEL	70
72	4.1 Introduction	70

74	4.2	Data and simulation samples	71
75	4.3	$H \rightarrow WW \rightarrow e\nu\mu\nu$ search	71
76	4.4	$H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ search	76
77	4.5	$H \rightarrow ZZ \rightarrow 4\ell$ search	77
78	4.6	Combined results	79
79	4.7	Conclusion	81
80	5	OBSERVATION OF VECTOR BOSON FUSION PRODUCTION OF $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$	83
81	5.1	Introduction	83
82	5.2	Data and simulation samples	84
83	5.3	Object selection	88
84	5.4	Analysis selection	91
85	5.5	Background estimation	99
86	5.6	Systematic uncertainties	110
87	5.7	Results	114
88	6	COMBINED RUN I $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ RESULTS	119
89	6.1	Introduction	119
90	6.2	Results of dedicated gluon fusion $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ search	120
91	6.3	Signal strength measurements in ggF and VBF production	122
92	6.4	Measurement of Higgs couplings to vector bosons and fermions	125
93	6.5	Higgs production cross section measurement	126
94	6.6	Conclusion	127
95	III	Search for Higgs pair production in the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel in LHC	
96		Run 2 at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV	129
97	7	SEARCH FOR HIGGS PAIR PRODUCTION IN BOOSTED $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ FINAL STATES	130
98	7.1	Introduction	130
99	7.2	Motivation	131
100	7.3	Data and simulation samples	133
101	7.4	Event reconstruction and object selection	135
102	7.5	Event selection	138
103	7.6	Data-driven background estimation	141
104	7.7	Systematic uncertainties	147
105	7.8	Results	150

106	8 COMBINED LIMITS FROM BOOSTED AND RESOLVED SEARCHES	152
107	8.1 Introduction	152
108	8.2 Resolved results	153
109	8.3 Search technique and results	153
110	8.4 Limit setting	154
111	IV Looking ahead	158
112	9 CONCLUSION	159
113	APPENDIX A OPTIMIZATION OF b-TAGGING WORKING POINT IN $X \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$	
114	SEARCH	161
115	APPENDIX B b-TAGGING PERFORMANCE AT HIGH p_T	163
116	B.1 MV2 algorithm overview	163
117	B.2 Changes in MV2 score at high p_T	164
118	B.3 Tagging efficiency by individual jet	167
119	B.4 Effect of multiple b -quarks inside one jet	168
120	B.5 Changes in track quality at high p_T	168
121	REFERENCES	169

Listing of figures

122

123	1.1	The particles of the Standard Model and their properties[1].	7
124	1.2	The four most common Higgs boson production modes at the LHC: (a) gluon-gluon fu- 125 sion, (b) vector boson fusion, (c) $W/Z + H$ production, (d) $t\bar{t}H$ production	ii
126	1.3	Higgs production cross sections as a function of center of mass energy (\sqrt{s}) at a pp collider[2]. .	12
127	1.4	Higgs boson branching ratios as a function of m_H [2].	14
128	1.5	The two leading diagrams for Standard Model di-Higgs production at the LHC: (a) box di- 129 agram, (b) Higgs self coupling	16
130	1.6	Diagrams with new vertices for non-resonant Higgs pair production arising in composite 131 Higgs models	17
132	1.7	Generic Feynman diagram for resonant Higgs pair production in BSM theories	18
133	1.8	Branching ratios for a spin-2 Randall-Sundrum graviton as a function of mass computed in 134 MadGraph with the CP3-Origins implementation [3, 4]	18
135	1.9	$\sigma \times BR(HH)$ for RSG as a function of mass computed in MadGraph with the CP3-Origins 136 implementation [3, 4]	19
137	1.10	RSG width as a function of mass computed in MadGraph with the CP3-Origins implemen- 138 tation [3, 4]	20
139	1.11	Branching ratios for heavy Higgs H in Type I (left) and Type II (right) 2HDM models with 140 $\tan \beta = 1.5$ and $\cos(\beta - \alpha) = 0.1(0.01)$ for Type I (Type II). [5]	21
141	2.1	A schematic view of the LHC ring [6]	23
142	2.2	A full diagram of the ATLAS detector [7]	26
143	2.3	The ATLAS coordinate system	27
144	2.4	Layout of the ATLAS Inner Detector system [8]	28
145	2.5	Layout of the ATLAS calorimeter system [7]	30
146	2.6	Layout of the ATLAS muon system [7]	32
147	2.7	Predicted field integral as a function of $ \eta $ for the ATLAS magnet system [7]	34
148	2.8	ATLAS trigger rates for Level-1 triggers as a function of instantaneous luminosity in 2012 149 and 2015 operation. These are single object triggers for electromagnetic clusters (EM), muons 150 (MU), jets (J), missing energy (XE), and τ leptons (TAU). The threshold of the trigger is given 151 in the name in GeV. [9]	35
152	2.9	Instantaneous luminosity as a function of time for data recorded by ATLAS at different cen- 153 ter of mass energies [10, 11]	36

154	2.10	MDT tube hit (solid) and segment (dashed) efficiency as a function of hit rate per tube [12]	38
155	2.11	Trigger rate as a function of p_T threshold with and without the NSW upgrade [12]	38
156	2.12	Illustrations of the geometry (left) and operating principle (right) of the micromegas detector [12]	39
157	2.13	Geometry of the sTGC detector [12]	40
158	2.14	Illustration of particle interactions in ATLAS [13]	41
159	2.15	Electron performance: (a) reconstruction efficiency as a function of electron E_T [14] (b) energy resolution in simulation as a function of $ \eta $ for different energy electrons [15]	42
160	2.16	Muon performance: (a) reconstruction efficiency as a function of muon p_T (b) dimuon mass resolution as a function of average p_T [16]	44
161	2.17	Jet energy response after calibration as a function of true p_T in simulation [17]	45
162	2.18	Light jet rejection (1/efficiency) vs. b -jet efficiency for MV1 and its input algorithms (a) [18] and MV2 (b) [19] in simulated $t\bar{t}$ events. The numbers in the algorithm names in (b) refer to the fraction of charm events used in the MV2 training.	46
163	2.19	Resolution of E_T^{miss} components as a function of $\sum E_T$ before pileup suppression with different pileup techniques [20]	48
164	3.1	Branching ratios for a WW system. q refers to quarks. ℓ can be either an electron or muon, and the leptonic branching ratios of the τ are included. For example, the $\ell\nu qq$ final state includes one W decaying to $e\nu$, $\mu\nu$, or $\tau\nu$. τ_h refer to hadronic decays of the τ	52
165	3.2	Feynman diagram for Standard Model WW production	53
166	3.3	Feynman diagrams for top pair production (left) and Wt production (right)	54
167	3.4	An example Feynman diagram of $W + \text{jets}$ production	54
168	3.5	An example Feynman diagram of $Z + \text{jets}$ production	55
169	3.6	An illustration of the unique analysis signal regions[21]	56
170	3.7	A graphical illustration of the $E_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss}}$ calculation	58
171	3.8	Predicted backgrounds (compared with data) as a function of n_j (a and b) and n_b (c)	59
172	3.9	An event display of a $Z/\gamma^* + \text{jets}$ event illustrating the effect of pileup interactions	60
173	3.10	The RMS of different missing transverse momentum definitions as a function of the average number of interactions per bunch crossing	61
174	3.11	The difference between the true and reconstructed values of the missing transverse momentum (a) and m_T (b) in a gluon fusion signal sample	62
175	3.12	Comparison of f_{recoil} distributions for $Z/\gamma^* + \text{jets}$, $H \rightarrow WW^*$, and other backgrounds with real neutrinos.	63
176	3.13	Signal significance as a function of required value for f_{recoil} and $p_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss}(\text{trk})}$ in the ggF $H \rightarrow WW^*$ with $n_j = 0$	64

189	4.1	Jet multiplicity distribution in data and MC after applying lepton, jet, and $E_{\mathrm{T},\mathrm{rel}}^{\mathrm{miss}}$ selections. The WW and top backgrounds have been normalized using control samples, and the hashed band indicates the total uncertainty on the prediction. [22]	72
190			
191	4.2	Comparison of m_{T} between data and simulation in the $n_j = 0$ WW (a) and $n_j = 1$ top (b) control samples [22]	74
192			
193	4.3	m_{T} distribution in the $H \rightarrow WW \rightarrow e\nu\mu\nu$ $n_j \leq 1$ channels for 8 TeV data[22].	76
194			
195	4.4	Diphoton mass spectrum in 7 and 8 TeV data. Panel a) shows the unweighted data distri- bution superimposed on the background fit, while panel c) shows the data where each event category is weighted by its signal to background ratio. Panels b) and d) show the respective distributions with background subtracted[22].	77
196			
197	4.5	Four lepton invariant mass spectrum ($m_{4\ell}$) in 7 and 8 TeV data compared to background estimate. A 125 GeV SM Higgs signal is shown in blue[22].	78
198			
199	4.6	Local p_0 distribution as a function of hypothesized Higgs mass for the $H \rightarrow ZZ^* \rightarrow 4\ell$ (a), $H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ (b), and $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ (c) channels. Dashed curves show expected results, while solid curves show observed. Red curves are from 7 TeV data, blue curves from 8 TeV, and black curved combined[22].	80
200			
201	4.7	Combined 95% CL limits (a), local p_0 values (b), and signal strength measurement (c) as a function of Higgs mass[22].	81
202			
203	4.8	Comparison of measured signal strength μ for a 126 GeV Higgs in the 7 and 8 TeV datasets[22].	82
204			
205	4.9	Two dimensional likelihood as a function of signal strength μ and Higgs mass m_H [22].	82
206			
207	5.1	A comparison of the subleading lepton p_{T} spectrum between VBF $H \rightarrow WW^*$ production and $t\bar{t}$ background	85
208			
209	5.2	Leading jet η in VBF $H \rightarrow WW^*$ (red) and $t\bar{t}$ (black)	93
210			
211	5.3	Distributions of (a) m_{jj} , (b) Δy_{jj} , (c) $C_{\ell 1}$, and (d) $\sum m_{\ell j}$, for the VBF analysis. The top panels compare simulation and data, while the bottom panels show normalized distributions for all background processes and signal[21].	95
212			
213	5.4	A cartoon of the WW final state. Momenta are represented with thin arrows, spins with thick arrows. [21]	96
214			
215	5.5	Event display of a VBF candidate event[21].	97
216			
217	5.6	Distributions of $m_{\ell\ell}$ (top left), $\Delta\phi_{\ell\ell}$ (top right), and m_{T} (bottom), Higgs topology vari- ables used in the selection requirements of the cut-based signal region and as inputs to the BDT result. These are plotted after all of the BDT pre-training selection cuts[21].	100
218			
219	5.7	Distributions of m_{jj} (top left), Δy_{jj} (top right), $\sum C_{\ell}$ (bottom), VBF topology variables used in the selection requirements of the cut-based signal region and as inputs to the BDT result. These are plotted after all of the BDT pre-training selection cuts[21].	101
220			
221	5.8	Distributions of m_{jj} (a) and O_{BDT} (b) in the VBF $n_b = 1$ top CR [21].	103
222			
223			
224			

225	5.9	Comparison of m_{jj} shape in a same flavor $Z \rightarrow \ell\ell$ control region and the VBF cut-based signal region.	105
226	5.10	General illustration of the ABCD region definitions for $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell$ background estimation.	106
227	5.11	Distribution of m_{T2} in the WW validation region of the VBF analysis[21].	107
228	5.12	Extrapolation factors for the $W + \text{jets}$ estimate derived for muons (a) and electrons (b) as a function of lepton p_T [21].	109
229	5.13	Background composition in final VBF signal region[21].	110
230	5.14	Variations in the top background extrapolation factor in the cut-based analysis due to PDF uncertainties, binned in m_T	112
231	5.15	Variations in the top background extrapolation factor in the cut-based analysis due to QCD scale uncertainties, binned in m_T	113
232	5.16	Postfit distributions in the cut-based VBF analysis. Panel (a) shows the one-dimensional m_T distribution, while (b) shows the data candidates split into the bins of m_T and m_{jj} used in the final fit[21].	116
233	5.17	Postfit distributions in the BDT VBF analysis[21].	117
234	5.18	Overlap between cut-based and BDT VBF signal region candidates in the m_{jj} - m_T plane. .	117
241	6.1	Post-fit m_T distribution in the $n_j \leq 1$ regions[21].	121
242	6.2	Best fit signal strength $\hat{\mu}$ as a function of hypothesized m_H [21].	123
243	6.3	Local p_0 as a function of m_H [21].	123
244	6.4	Likelihood as a function of $\mu_{\text{VBF}}/\mu_{\text{ggF}}$ [21].	124
245	6.5	Likelihood scan as a function of μ_{VBF} and μ_{ggF} [21].	125
246	6.6	Likelihood scan as a function of κ_F and κ_V [21].	126
247	6.7	Comparison of signal strength measurements in different Higgs decay channels on ATLAS[23].	128
249	7.1	Parton luminosity ratios as a function of resonance mass M_X for 13/8 TeV and 7/8 TeV [24].	131
250	7.2	Summary of HH branching ratios [25].	132
251	7.3	Minimum ΔR between B decay vertices for different RSG masses in a $G_{\text{KK}}^* \rightarrow HH \rightarrow 4b$ sample with $c = 1$	133
252	7.4	Trigger efficiency for events passing all signal region selections as a function of mass in $G_{\text{KK}}^* \rightarrow HH \rightarrow 4b$ samples with $c = 1$ [26]. In the trigger names, “j” refers to a jet or jets. “ht” refers to H_T , the scalar sum of transverse momenta in the event. “bloose” refers to a loose b -tagging requirement applied to the jet. “aior” refers to anti- k_T jets with $R = 1.0$. The numbers at the end are the thresholds on the given quantity in GeV.	135
258	7.5	Comparison of untrimmed and trimmed jet masses for large radius jets in a RSG sample with $m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} = 1$ TeV. JES (JMS) refers to the standard jet energy (mass) scale calibration for ATLAS [17].	136
259			

260	7.6	Efficiency of finding two b -jets from each Higgs in an RSG event using calorimeter jets with $R = 0.3$ or different track jet radii [27]	137
261	7.7	Illustration of the boosted selection requirements on Higgs candidates. Each large-radius calorime- ter jet (Higgs candidate) must contain two track jets	139
262	7.8	Acceptance \times efficiency as a function of mass for (a) RSG and (b) narrow heavy scalar sig- nal models [28].	140
263	7.9	Efficiency of requiring 3 or 4 b -tagged track jets vs. RSG mass. The efficiency quoted is rel- ative to the previous selection requirements (rather than an absolute efficiency).	141
264	7.10	M_J^{sublead} vs. M_J^{lead} in a 2 b -tag data sample. The signal region is defined by the inner black contour ($X_{hh} < 1.6$) and the sideband region is defined by the outer contour ($R_{hh} >$ 35.8 GeV). The region between the black contours is the control region. The mass region which is enriched in $t\bar{t}$ background is also shown for illustration. [28]	143
265	7.11	An illustration of the data-driven background estimation technique for the boosted anal- ysis	144
266	7.12	Leading large-R jet mass in the 3 b (a) and 4 b (b) sideband regions. The multijet and $t\bar{t}$ back- grounds are estimated using the data-driven methods described above. Because their normal- izations are derived in the sideband region, the total background normalization is constrained by default to match the normalization of the data [28].	145
267	7.13	Di-jet invariant mass ($M_{2,J}$) in the 3 b (a) and 4 b (b) control regions. The multijet and $t\bar{t}$ back- grounds are estimated using the data-driven methods described above [28].	146
268	7.14	Di-jet invariant mass ($M_{2,J}$) in the 3 b (a) and 4 b (b) signal regions. The multijet and $t\bar{t}$ back- grounds are estimated using the data-driven methods described above. In the 3 b region, a graviton signal with $m_{G_{KK}^*} = 1.8$ TeV and $c = 1$ is overlaid, with the cross section mul- tiplied by a factor of 50 so that the signal is visible. In the 4 b region, signals with $m_{G_{KK}^*} =$ 1.0 TeV and $m_{G_{KK}^*} = 1.5$ TeV are overlaid, both with $c = 1$ and the yields multiplied by factors of 2 and 5 respectively [28].	151
269	8.1	Di-jet invariant mass ($M_{2,J}$) in the resolved signal region. Agraviton signal with $m_{G_{KK}^*} =$ 800 GeV and $c = 1$ is overlaid. [28].	154
270	8.2	Expected and observed upper limit as a function of mass for G_{KK}^* in the RSG model with (a) $c = 1$ and (b) $c = 2$, as well as (c) H with fixed $\Gamma_H = 1$ GeV, at the 95% confidence level in the CL_s method. [28]	157
271	A.1	Estimated significance as a function of signal mass for RSG $c = 1$ models in the 3 b (a) and 4 b (b) regions for different b -tagging efficiency working points	162
272	B.1	Summary of the inputs to the MV2 b -tagging algorithm	164
273	B.2	p_T of the leading track jet in the leading calorimeter jet for different signal masses in RSG $c =$ 1 models	165

296	B.3	MV _{2c2o} score for the leading track jet (a) and subleading track jet (b) of the leading calorime-	
297		ter jet for different signal masses in RSG $c = 1$ models	165
298	B.4	IP _{3D} log-likelihood ratio ($\log(p_b/p_u)$) of the leading track jet in the leading calorimeter jet	
299		for different signal masses in RSG $c = 1$ models	166
300	B.5	Mass (a) and number of tracks (b) for the secondary vertices computed with the SV1 algo-	
301		rithm. When no secondary vertex is found, the quantiites are assigned to default negative val-	
302		ues.	166
303	B.6	Mass (a) and number of tracks (b) for vertices computed with the JetFitter algorithm. When	
304		no vertices are found, the quantiites are assigned to default negative values.	167
305	B.7	MV _{2c2o} b -tagging efficiency for each of the four track jets in the boosted $4b$ selection as a func-	
306		tion of RSG mass for $c = 1$ models.	168

Listing of tables

307

308	1.1	Production cross sections for a 125 GeV Higgs boson at $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV with scale and PDF uncertainties [2].	13
309	1.2	Branching ratios for a 125 GeV Higgs boson[2].	15
310	1.3	Possible channels for Higgs searches. Checkmarks denote the most sensitive production modes [29].	15
311			
312			
313	1.4	Production cross sections for pair production of a 125 GeV Higgs boson at $\sqrt{s} = 14$ TeV with total uncertainty [30]. The uncertainties include QCD scale and PDF variations as well as uncertainties on α_S	16
314			
315			
316	2.1	Evolution of LHC machine conditions [31, 32]	25
317	2.2	Performance requirements for the ATLAS detector [7].	37
318	2.3	Signal efficiencies for WH production with $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ and $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \mu\nu qq$ under different trigger configurations [12].	40
319			
320	3.1	A summary of backgrounds to the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ signal	55
321			
322	4.1	Monte carlo generators used to model signal and background for the Higgs search[22].	71
323	4.2	Normalization factors (ratio of data and MC yields in a control sample) for the Standard Model WW and top backgrounds in the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ analysis [22]. Only statistical uncertainties are shown.	74
324			
325	4.3	Data and expected yields for signal and background in the final $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ signal region. Uncertainties shown are both statistical and systematic. [22]	75
326			
327	4.4	Summary of the expected and observed significance and measured signal strengths in the combined 7 and 8 TeV datasets for the Higgs discovery analysis[22].	79
328			
329	5.1	Single lepton triggers used for electrons and muons. A logical “or” of the triggers listed for each lepton type is taken. Units are in GeV, and the i denotes an isolation requirement in the trigger.	85
330			
331			
332	5.2	Di-lepton triggers used for different flavor combinations. The two thresholds listed refer to leading and sub-leading leptons, respectively. The di-muon trigger only requires a single lepton at level-i.	85
333			
334			

335	5.3	Trigger efficiency for signal events and relative gain of adding a dilepton trigger on top of the single lepton trigger selection. The first lepton is the leading, while the second is the sub-leading. Efficiencies shown here are for the ggF signal in the $n_j = 0$ category but are comparable for the VBF signal.	86
336	5.4	Monte Carlo samples used to model the signal and background processes[21].	87
337	5.5	p_T dependent isolation requirements for muons. Muons are required to have the amount of calorimeter or track based cone sums be less than this fraction of their p_T	89
338	5.6	p_T dependent requirements for electrons. Electrons are required to have the amount of calorimeter or track based cone sums be less than this fraction of their E_T	90
339	5.7	Event selection for the $n_j \geq 2$ VBF analysis in the 8 TeV cut-based analysis[21].	98
340	5.8	Top normalization factors computed at each stage of the cut-based selection. Uncertainties are statistical only.	102
341	5.9	Top normalization factors computed for each bin of O_{BDT} . Uncertainties are statistical only.	102
342	5.10	$Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau$ correction factors for the VBF cut-based analysis. Uncertainties are statistical only.	105
343	5.11	$Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell$ normalization factors for cut-based and BDT analyses. Uncertainties are statistical only.	107
344	5.12	Systematic uncertainties for various processes in the cut-based VBF analysis, given in units of % change in yield. Values are given for the low m_{jj} signal region.	111
345	5.13	Composition of the post-fit uncertainties (in %) on the total signal (N_{sig}), total background (N_{bkg}), and individual background yields in the VBF analysis[21].	114
346	5.14	Event selection for the VBF BDT analysis. The event yields in (a) are shown after the pre-selection and the additional requirements applied before the BDT classification (see text). The event yields in (b) are given in bins in O_{BDT} after the classification[21].	115
347	6.1	All signal regions definitions input into final statistical fit[21].	120
348	6.2	Post-fit yields in the different ggF and VBF dedicated signal regions[21].	121
349	7.1	Summary of requirements on objects used in the $X \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ search	138
350	7.2	Effect of boosted selection on data, RSG signal models, $t\bar{t}$, and $Z+\text{jets}$. The numbers from simulation are normalized with the MC generator cross section and do not take into account the data driven estimates described in section 7.6 [33].	142
351	7.3	Mass region definitions used for background estimation	143
352	7.4	Parameters derived for exponential fit to background M_{2J} shape in the 3 b and 4 b signal regions [33]	146
353	7.5	The number of events in data and predicted background events in the boosted 3-tag and 4-tag sideband and control regions. The uncertainties shown are statistical only. [28]	147

370	7.6	Summary of systematic uncertainties in the total background and signal event yields (expressed in %) in the boosted 3-tag and 4-tag signal regions. Systematic uncertainties on the signal normalization are shown for models with $m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} = 1.5 \text{ TeV}$ and both $c = 1$ and $c = 2$ as well as a narrow width heavy scalar.	149
371			
372	7.7	Alternate fit functions used to model the M_{JJ} distribution in the QCD multijet background. In the equations, $x = M_{JJ}/\sqrt{s}$	150
373			
374	7.8	Observed yields in the 3-tag and 4-tag signal regions for the boosted analysis compared to the predicted number of background events Errors correspond to the total uncertainties in the predicted event yields. The yields for a graviton with $m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} = 1 \text{ TeV}$ and $c = 1$ are also shown. [28]	151
375			
376	8.1	Observed yields in the resolve selection 4-tag signal region compared to the predicted num- ber of background events Errors correspond to the total uncertainties in the predicted event yields. The yields for a graviton with $m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} = 800 \text{ GeV}$ and $c = 1$ are also shown. [28] . .	153
377			
378			
379			
380			
381			
382			

Acknowledgments

385 I have been a member of the Harvard ATLAS group for many years now, first as an undergraduate
 386 and then as a graduate student. As a result, I have had the privilege of interacting with many amazing
 387 people there over the years and have accumulated a large list of folks to thank.

388 First and foremost, I must thank the two people who have effectively been my academic parents since
 389 I started in the Harvard group: Joao Guimaraes da Costa and Melissa Franklin. Melissa Franklin and
 390 Joao Guimaraes da Costa. They have both been so important to both my academic and personal devel-
 391 opment that I can't even put one before the other. Joao has been an excellent PhD advisor, showing me
 392 how to look at the big picture and helping me navigate the sometimes complicated politics of ATLAS.
 393 He got me started on my first projects with ATLAS as a young college sophomore before there was even
 394 beam in the LHC (go cosmic ray muons!). He has also been a constant source of advice and support,
 395 even when we have been on different continents. Melissa gave me my start in HEP as a summer student
 396 on CDF and has been an unbelievable mentor throughout my time at Harvard. I still remember our
 397 weekly chalkboard particle physics lessons after that first summer. She also graciously took me on as a
 398 co-advisee after Joao moved on to his new position at IHEP. I am incredibly lucky to have had both of
 399 them as advisors.

400 Another mentor who was essential to my development as a graduate student is Paolo Giromini. His
 401 uncanny knowledge and intuition about detectors is unmatched and I am very grateful to have had
 402 the chance to work with him on the micromegas for the ATLAS New Small Wheel upgrade project. I
 403 owe essentially all my practical knowledge about detectors (and building things in general) to him. I also
 404 appreciated his unique sense of humor which made sometimes difficult tasks much easier to get through.

405 I am grateful to John Huth and Masahiro Morii for their helpful advice as the other professors in the
 406 Harvard ATLAS group as well. I especially thank John for helping me get started on the micromegas
 407 trigger project and being a great professor to TF particle physics for.

408 I also owe enormous thanks to Hugh Skottowe, the postdoc that I worked most closely with in my
 409 early years as a graduate student. He was always able to help me through complicated tasks in everything
 410 from writing code to understanding difficult physics concepts. I particularly enjoyed walking down to
 411 his office in Palfrey at random times and talking through whatever problem I was tackling on that day.

412 Alex Tuna, the second postdoc that I worked closely with at Harvard, deserves great thanks as well.
 413 He helped me push through to the end of my graduate career and offered great advice along the way.

414 Being at Harvard, I have seen an incredible array of graduate students graduate before me: Ben Smith,
 415 Verena Martinez Outschoorn, Srivas Prasad, Michael Kagan, Giovanni Zevi Della Porta, Laura Jeanty,
 416 Kevin Mercurio, William Spearman, and Andy Yen. I want to thank them all for showing me what a

417 good physicist looks like and for patiently answering my questions and offering insightful advice about
418 physics and life.

419 Getting through graduate school would not have been possible without the support and friendship
420 of the other students in our group. Thanks to Emma Tolley for geeking out with me about cool com-
421 puting stuff, going to taste delicious beers with me, and helping start the Palfrey tradition of Taco Tues-
422 days. Thanks to Brian Clark for being a great friend and housing companion both in Kirkland House
423 and in our tiny summer apartment in Geneva (and thanks to his partner Allison Goff for the same rea-
424 sons!). Thanks to Siyuan Sun for giving me my first aikido lesson and always being there for great con-
425 versations, big and small. Tony (Baojia) Tong deserves special recognition for working with me on the
426 $4b$ analysis and putting up with my sometimes strange requests (and giving me rides to the Val Thoiry
427 Migros so I wouldn't have to pay exorbitant Geneva grocery prices!). Stephen Chan is probably the only
428 student in the group who both understands my references to the Sopranos and makes some of his own.
429 To the younger graduate students - Karri Di Petrillo, Jennifer Roloff, Julia Gonski, and Ann Wang - I
430 want to say thank you for making the group a fun and lively place to be and giving all of us energy that
431 the older graduate students like myself can sometimes lack.

432 I'd like to thank Annie Wei and Gray Putnam, the two undergraduates I have worked with as a gradu-
433 ate student. Their unbelievable intuition and quickness in picking up difficult particle physics concepts
434 is inspiring.

435 I would also like to thank all of the postdocs that I have interacted with in my time in the Harvard
436 group: Kevin Black, Alberto Belloni (who would always ask me "Do you have it?"...I can now say that
437 I do!), Shulamit Moed, Corrinne Mills, Geraldine Conti, David Lopez Mateos, Chris Rogan, Valerio
438 Ippolito, and Stefano Zambito.

439 There are many people on ATLAS who have helped me get to this point as well. In the WW group,
440 I have to thank Jonathan Long, Joana Machado Miguens, Ben Cerio, Philip Chang, Bonnie Chow,
441 Richard Polifka, Heberth Torres, Tae Min Hong, and Jennifer Hsu for being wonderful colleagues and
442 making the entire analysis run smoothly. In the $4b$ group, I have to thank Qi Zeng, Tony Tong, Alex
443 Tuna, Michael Kagan, Max Bellomo, John Alison, and Patrick Bryant.

444 Kirkland House was my home for the last three years of graduate school and was an wonderful envi-
445 ronment and support system. I want to thank my fellow tutors, especially Brian Clark and Allison Goff
446 (again), Zach Abel, Kelly Bodwin, Alex Lupsasca, John and Pam Park, Luke and Erin Walczewski, and
447 Philip Gant for their friendship and support. I also want to thank Kate Drizos Cavell, Bob Butler, and
448 the Faculty Deans Tom and Verena Conley.

449 There are still a few friends that haven't been covered yet and deserve great thanks. Jake Connors and
450 Meredith MacGregor have been absolutely wonderful friends and I thank them in particular for the
451 many home-cooked meals and great conversations we've had in their apartment. Nihar Shah has been
452 my friend and confidant since we were both wee freshmen in Harvard Yard. Gareth Kafka, though he
453 sits on the "neutrino" side of Palfrey House, has made days there more fun and has also been an enthusi-

454 astic participant in the Palfrey Taco Tuesdays.

455 Being at Harvard necessarily means having to navigate through bureaucracy at some point or another.
456 I thank Lisa Cacciabaudo, Carol Davis, and Jacob Barandes for always having open doors and being the
457 most kind, helpful people in the Physics department.

458 I thank Venky Narayananamurti for putting on a great SPU course that I was proud to be a part of and
459 TF for. I'd also like to thank Jim Waldo for offering me much advice about working in Computer Science
460 and giving me a fun data project to be a part of in my free time.

461 I grew up in a very tight knit Serbian community on the south side of Chicago which helped make
462 me the person I am today. I would like to thank all of the people at St. Simeon Mirotochivi Serbian
463 Orthodox Church who have always been sources of enthusiasm and support in my life.

464 I would not be here without the unconditional love and constant support and encouragaement of my
465 family. To my pokojni Dendas Branko and Miloje, my pokojni Baba Milka, and my Baba Desa, I want to
466 say thank you for instilling in me at an early age the love of curiosity and storytelling that I have carried
467 throughout my life. To my sister Angelina, I want to say thank you for always loving me and being my
468 partner in crime throughout our childhoods. To my parents, Miroljub and Nada, Tata and Mama, I
469 really cannot express how grateful I am to you and how much I owe you. As I look back now I see how
470 I am a combination of both of your best qualities and every day I am in situations where I understand
471 more and more the lessons you made sure to teach me and the sacrifices you made to make sure I got the
472 best possible education. I love you all.

473 Finally, I have to thank my soul mate, the one person in my life who understands me more than any-
474 one else, my fiancee Kelly Brock. You are my sounding board, my support system, my cheerleader (fig-
475 uratively and literally!), my best friend, my role model, and my everything. I would not have gotten
476 through graduate school without you and my life would not be the same without you. I cannot wait to
477 start our new lives together as the married doctors, tackling whatever comes our way with the same zeal
478 with which we tackled graduate school. I love you with all my heart and soul.

0

479

480

Introduction

481 The Higgs boson is often described as one of the cornerstones of the Standard Model. Since the con-
482 ception of the Higgs mechanism as the source of electroweak symmetry breaking in the early 1960s,
483 countless collider experiments have searched for this elusive particle. This dissertation presents multi-
484 ple studies of the Higgs boson with the ATLAS detector at the Large Hadron Collider (LHC).

485 One of the first priorities of the early LHC was the search for the Higgs boson. This search was first
486 tackled in three main channels: $H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$, $H \rightarrow ZZ^*$, and $H \rightarrow WW^*$. Each channel has its own
487 merits, but the WW^* is particularly suited to searching over a wide range of masses. The $H \rightarrow WW$
488 branching ratio is large and it is the primary decay channel above the $2m_W$ mass threshold.

489 While the rate of events produced in $H \rightarrow WW^*$ is large, the channel poses some challenges. First,
490 the most common mode of study for this channel is $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$. With neutrinos in the
491 final state, it is not possible to fully reconstruct the invariant mass of the parent Higgs like the $\gamma\gamma$ and
492 $ZZ \rightarrow 4\ell$ channels. Second, the final state topology is mimicked by a wide variety of backgrounds that

493 need to be properly estimated. This means tailored selection requirements for background reduction
494 and robust background estimation techniques must both be developed.

495 In 2012, the ATLAS and CMS experiments announced the discovery of a new particle consistent with
496 the Higgs boson [22, 34]. In ATLAS, this discovery was made with 4.8 fb^{-1} collected at $\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ TeV}$
497 and 5.8 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 8 \text{ TeV}$. The $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ analysis played an important role in this
498 discovery. After the discovery, measurement of the properties of the newly discovered particle and con-
499 firmation of its consistency with the Standard Model Higgs were the main priorities. The WW^* chan-
500 nel is also uniquely suited to these types of measurements. Because of its good rate, it offers some of the
501 best cross section measurements available among the various Higgs decay modes. It is also suited for
502 measurement of multiple Higgs production modes, like the vector boson fusion (VBF) mode, where in-
503 coming quarks radiate W/Z bosons which fuse to make a Higgs. In VBF production with the WW^*
504 decay channel, the coupling of the Higgs to the W boson is present in both the production and decay
505 which allows for more precise measurements of this coupling than other channels which rely on gluon
506 fusion production (where gluons couple to the Higgs through a top loop in the production). The mea-
507 surement of VBF carries the additional challenge that its cross section is an order of magnitude smaller
508 than that of gluon fusion, meaning that the large branching ratio to WW^* offers an additional advan-
509 tage in isolating this production mode. In the final ATLAS Run 1 results, combining 20.3 fb^{-1} taken at
510 $\sqrt{s} = 8 \text{ TeV}$ with the 4.8 fb^{-1} collected at $\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ TeV}$, the WW^* channel achieved its first observa-
511 tion of VBF production of the Higgs.

512 After Run 1 of the LHC, with the existence of the Higgs now firmly established, the focus shifted to
513 searches for physics beyond the Standard Model. In particular, searches for high mass resonances benefit
514 from the LHC's increase to $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$ in Run 2. The newly discovered Higgs can be used as a tool
515 in these searches. Higgs pair production in the Standard Model has a low cross section that requires large
516 datasets (on the order of the LHC's lifetime) for full measurement. However, new physics can modify
517 this cross section, especially new resonances which decay to two Higgs bosons. A search for Higgs pair
518 production in the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state was performed with 3.2 fb^{-1} collected with ATLAS at $\sqrt{s} =$
519 13 TeV in 2015.

520 This dissertation begins by discussing the discovery of the Higgs and the role of the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow$
521 $\ell\nu\ell\nu$ channel. It then discusses the first observation of the VBF production mode in $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow$
522 $\ell\nu\ell\nu$ with the full ATLAS Run 1 dataset, as well as the final combined Run 1 measurements from this
523 channel. Finally, it presents a search for Higgs pair production in the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel. It is orga-
524 nized into four parts.

525 Part 1 presents the theoretical and experimental background required for the subsequent parts. Chap-
526 ter 1 gives an overview of Higgs physics, particularly single and double Higgs production in the Standard
527 Model and beyond. Chapter 2 presents details regarding the Large Hadron Collider and the ATLAS
528 experiment. The evolution of machine conditions, descriptions of the ATLAS sub-detectors, and an
529 overview of object reconstruction in ATLAS are all shown. A brief interlude on the ATLAS Muon New
530 Small Wheel upgrade is also given, as this upgrade has been a focus of my graduate work and will have
531 important impact on ATLAS' ability to study the Higgs at the High Luminosity LHC.

532 Part 2 discusses the observation and measurement of the Higgs in the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$
533 channel in the ATLAS Run 1 dataset at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ and 8 TeV. Because I worked in this channel from
534 before the discovery through to the final analysis of the Run 1 dataset, Part 2 is organized in such a way
535 to allow easy presentation of multiple analyses on different subsets of the full Run 1 dataset. Chapter 3
536 presents a general overview of the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ analysis strategy and defines many of the variables and
537 common elements used in the rest of Part 2. Chapter 4 presents the discovery of the Higgs boson, fo-
538 cusing on the role of the WW^* channel in this discovery. Chapter 5 presents the first observation of the
539 VBF production mode of the Higgs in the WW^* channel, a study which was done on the full Run 1
540 ATLAS dataset. In this chapter, the focus is mainly on the selection cut-based VBF analysis. The cut-
541 based analysis was an important first step to the final VBF result which used a Boosted Decision Tree
542 (BDT). Where appropriate, connections between the cut-based and BDT analyses are shown and their
543 compatibility is discussed. Finally, the VBF analysis was an important input into the combined Run 1
544 $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ result, which used both the gluon fusion and VBF channels in a combined
545 fit to infer properties of the Higgs, including its couplings to the gauge bosons and its production cross
546 section. This is the topic of Chapter 6.

547 Part 3 presents a search for Higgs pair production in the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel. Chapter 7 presents
548 an overview of this search in the boosted regime, where the Higgs pairs are the result of the decay of a
549 heavy resonance. Chapter 8 shows the combined results between the boosted regime and the resolved
550 regime, which is sensitive to lower mass resonances and non-resonant Higgs pair production. Finally,
551 Part 4 presents a conclusion and brief outlook of future Higgs physics with ATLAS.

Part I

Theoretical and Experimental Background

1

554

555

The Physics of the Higgs Boson

556 This chapter presents an overview of the Standard Model of Particle Physics and in particular the physics
557 of the Higgs boson. First, a brief overview of the Standard Model and its history are presented. Then, a
558 description of the Higgs mechanism of electroweak symmetry breaking is given. Next, the physics of sin-
559 gle Higgs boson production and decay is described. The Standard Model also allows for production of
560 two Higgs bosons and this is detailed as well. Finally, di-Higgs production in two beyond the Standard
561 Model (BSM) theories - Randall-Sundrum gravitons (RSG) and Two Higgs Doublet Models (2HDM) -
562 is shown.

563 **I.I THE STANDARD MODEL OF PARTICLE PHYSICS**

564 The Standard Model (SM) of Particle Physics is a quantum field theory describing the fundamental
565 particles of nature and the forces that govern their interactions. Several comprehensive treatments of
566 the SM already exist in the literature[1, 29, 35–38] and this section will not rehash those. Rather, this

567 section presents a brief overview of the SM particles and forces in order to define them for subsequent
 568 discussions.

569 The Standard Model consists of two primary categories of fundamental particles: fermions (spin 1/2
 570 particles) and bosons (integer spin particles). The SM also describes three forces: electromagnetism, the
 571 weak nuclear force, and the strong nuclear force. Gravity is not included in the theory and is largely irrele-
 572 vant at the scales currently probed by collider experiments. Within the fermions, there are both quarks
 573 (which interact via all three forces) and the leptons. The charged leptons interact via electromagnetic and
 574 weak interactions, while neutrinos (neutral leptons) interact only via the weak force. Within the bosons,
 575 there are the W^\pm and Z bosons (the mediators of the weak force), the gluon (g , the mediator of the
 576 strong force), and the photon (γ), the mediator of the electromagnetic force. Finally, there is the Higgs
 577 boson, a fundamental spin-0 particle resulting from the Higgs mechanism of electroweak symmetry
 578 breaking. Figure 1.1 summarizes the fermions and bosons of the SM.

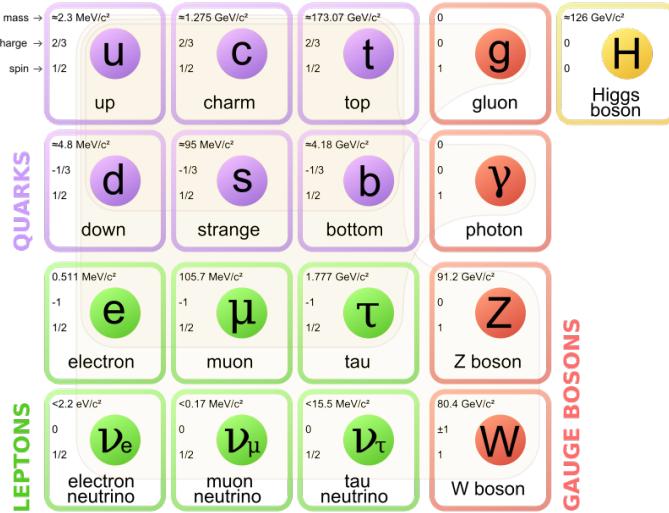


Figure 1.1: The particles of the Standard Model and their properties[1].

579 The Standard Model coalesced into a unified theoretical framework in the 1960s through the work of
 580 Glashow, Weinberg, Salam, and others on the theory of electroweak interactions[39–42]. This theory
 581 characterized both the electromagnetic and weak interactions as unified under a single gauge symme-
 582 try group, namely $SU(2) \times U(1)$. At low enough energy scales (on the order of the W and Z masses,
 583 the electroweak symmetry is broken, as evidenced by the fact that the weak bosons have mass while the

584 photon does not. The discovery of the Higgs boson in 2012 confirmed the Higgs mechanism as the most
 585 likely candidate for this electroweak symmetry breaking[22, 34]. The electroweak theory is then com-
 586 bined with the theory of quantum chromodynamics (which models the strong sector as a non-Abelian
 587 $SU(3)$ gauge group) to form the complete SM[43].

588 1.2 ELECTROWEAK SYMMETRY BREAKING AND THE HIGGS

589 In the Standard Model Lagrangian, it is difficult to include mass terms for the W and Z bosons without
 590 breaking the fundamental gauge symmetry of the Lagrangian. A traditional mass term does not preserve
 591 the $SU(2) \times U(1)$ symmetry. Additionally, scattering of massive W and Z bosons violate unitarity
 592 and these diagrams diverge at high energy scales. In the 1960s, Higgs, Brout, Englert, Guralnik, Kibble,
 593 and Hagen developed a mechanism for spontaneous symmetry breaking via the addition of a complex
 594 scalar doublet to the SM. Three of the four real degrees of freedom of this complex field would go to the
 595 longitudinal modes of the W^\pm and Z , thus allowing them to have mass[44–47]. The remaining degree
 596 of freedom would manifest as an additional scalar, known now as the Higgs boson.

597 The mechanism works by introducing a Lagrangian for the newly introduced field that still respects
 598 the symmetry of the Standard Model inherently, but with a minimum at a non-zero vacuum expecta-
 599 tion value for the field. In this minimum of the potential, the electroweak symmetry is broken. Specifi-
 600 cally, consider a complex scalar doublet Φ with four degrees of freedom, as shown in equation 1.1.

$$\Phi = \begin{pmatrix} \phi^+ \\ \phi^0 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} \phi_1^+ + i\phi_2^+ \\ \phi_1^0 + i\phi_2^0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1)$$

601 The minimal potential of a self-interacting Higgs that still respects the SM symmetry is given in equa-
 602 tion 1.2.

$$V(\Phi) = \mu^2 \Phi^\dagger \Phi + \lambda (\Phi^\dagger \Phi)^2 \quad (1.2)$$

603 If the μ^2 term of this potential is positive, then the potential has a minimum at $\Phi = 0$ and the SM

604 symmetry is preserved. However, if instead $\mu^2 < 0$, then the minimum is at a finite value of Φ , namely

$$\Phi_{\min} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ v \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3)$$

605 where $v = \sqrt{\mu^2/\lambda}$. Because this is the location of the minimum, it corresponds to the vacuum expecta-
606 tion value for the field ($\langle \Phi \rangle = \Phi_{\min}$). The excitations of the Higgs can then be parameterized as

$$\Phi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ v + H \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.4)$$

607 The full scalar Lagrangian, including the kinetic term, is then given as

$$\mathcal{L}_s = (D^\mu \Phi)^\dagger (D_\mu \Phi) - V(\Phi) \quad (1.5)$$

608 where the covariant derivative is defined as

$$D_\mu = \partial_\mu + \frac{ig}{2} \tau^a W_\mu^a + ig' Y B_\mu \quad (1.6)$$

609 and W^1, W^2, W^3 and B are the $SU(2)$ and $U(1)$ gauge fields of the electroweak theory, respectively. g
610 and g' are the corresponding coupling constants. With the scalar Lagrangian in place, the physical gauge
611 fields can then be written as

$$W_\mu^\pm = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (W_\mu^1 \mp i W_\mu^2) \quad (1.7)$$

612

$$Z_\mu = \frac{-g' B_\mu + g W_\mu^3}{\sqrt{g^2 + g'^2}} \quad (1.8)$$

613

$$A_\mu = \frac{g B_\mu + g' W_\mu^3}{\sqrt{g^2 + g'^2}} \quad (1.9)$$

614 Equation 1.7 corresponds to the charged W^+ and W^- bosons, equation 1.8 corresponds to the neutral

615 Z boson, and equation 1.9 corresponds to the neutral photon. The masses of the particles also arise from
 616 the Lagrangian. The photon has zero mass, while the masses of the W and Z bosons are given in equa-
 617 tion 1.10.

$$\begin{aligned} M_W^2 &= \frac{1}{4}g^2v^2 \\ M_Z^2 &= \frac{1}{4}(g^2 + g'^2)v^2 \end{aligned} \quad (1.10)$$

618 The fermion masses also arise through a coupling with the Higgs via the Yukawa interaction (for a de-
 619 tailed description, see [38]). In this case the coupling between the Higgs and the fermions goes as

$$g_{Hf\bar{f}} = \frac{m_f}{v} \quad (1.11)$$

620 The full Lagrangian of Higgs interactions can be written as

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{Higgs}} = -g_{Hf\bar{f}}\bar{f}fH + \frac{g_{HHH}}{6}H^3 + \frac{g_{HHHH}}{24}H^4 + \delta_V V_\mu V^\mu \left(g_{HVV}H + \frac{g_{HHVV}}{2}H^2 \right) \quad (1.12)$$

621 with

$$\begin{aligned} g_{HVV} &= \frac{2m_V^2}{v} & g_{HHVV} &= \frac{2m_V^2}{v^2} \\ g_{HHH} &= \frac{3m_H^2}{v} & g_{HHHH} &= \frac{3m_H^2}{v^2} \end{aligned} \quad (1.13)$$

622 Here, V refers to the W^\pm and Z , and $\delta_W = 1$ while $\delta_Z = 1/2$. Phenomenologically, there are a few
 623 features of this Lagrangian that are useful to note. First, note that the Higgs mass is a free parameter
 624 of the theory that must be determined experimentally. Second, note that the coupling of the Higgs to
 625 the vector bosons and fermions scales with the masses of these particles, a fact that is important when
 626 considering both the production and decays of the particle. Also note that the branching ratio of the
 627 Higgs to W bosons will be twice that of the branching ratio to Z if the Higgs mass is large enough to
 628 produce the particles on shell because of the extra symmetry factor associated with the W coupling.
 629 Finally, note the presence of the cubic and quartic Higgs self interaction terms, which can lead to final
 630 states with multiple Higgs bosons produced.

631 1.3 HIGGS BOSON PRODUCTION AND DECAY

632 This section discusses the properties of Higgs production and decay mechanisms. The details presented
633 here will focus on the properties of a 125 GeV Higgs boson, as this is the mass closest to that of the
634 newly discovered Higgs.

635 1.3.1 HIGGS PRODUCTION

636 The Higgs is produced by four main production modes at the Large Hadron Collider - gluon-gluon
637 fusion (ggF), vector boson fusion (VBF), associated production with a W or Z boson, or associated
638 production with top quarks ($t\bar{t}H$). Figure 1.2 shows the Feynman diagrams for these four modes.

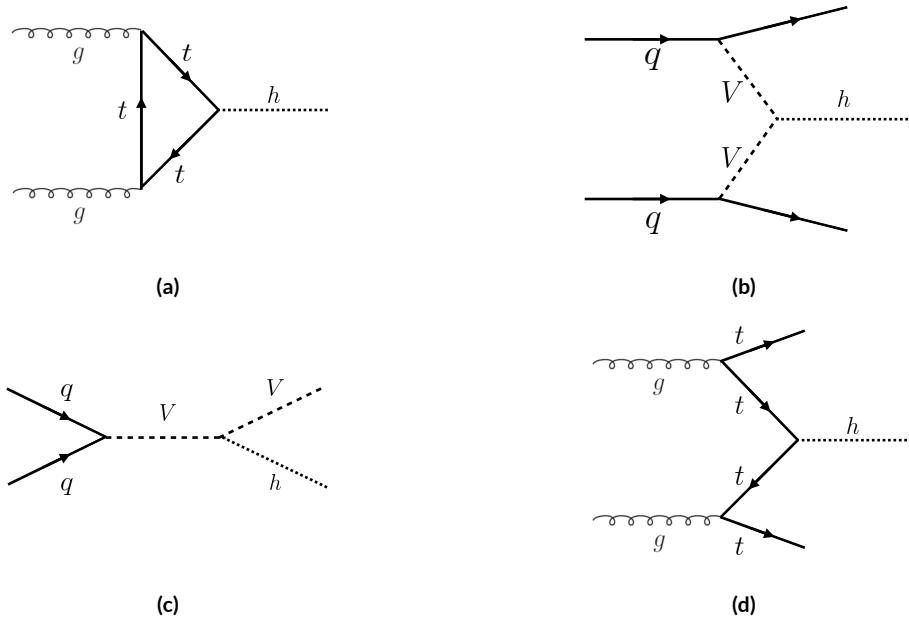


Figure 1.2: The four most common Higgs boson production modes at the LHC: (a) gluon-gluon fusion, (b) vector boson fusion, (c) $W/Z + H$ production, (d) $t\bar{t}H$ production

639 In gluon-gluon fusion, gluons from the incoming protons fuse via a top-quark loop to produce a
640 Higgs. The top quark is the dominant contribution in the loop due to its heavy mass and the fact that
641 the Higgs-fermion coupling constant scales with fermion mass. In vector boson fusion, the incoming
642 quarks each radiate a W or Z boson which fuse to produce the Higgs. This production mode results in
643 a final state with a Higgs boson and two additional jets which tend to be forward because they carry the

644 longitudinal momentum of the incoming partons. The Higgs can also be produced in association with a
 645 W or Z boson. The W/Z is produced normally and then radiates a Higgs (this mode is also sometimes
 646 known as “Higgs-strahlung”). Finally, the Higgs can be produced in association with two top quarks.
 647 Each incoming gluon splits into a $t\bar{t}$ pair, and one of the top pairs combines to create a Higgs.

648 Figure 1.3 shows the production cross section for a 125 GeV Higgs boson in each of these modes at a
 649 pp collider as a function of center of mass energy.

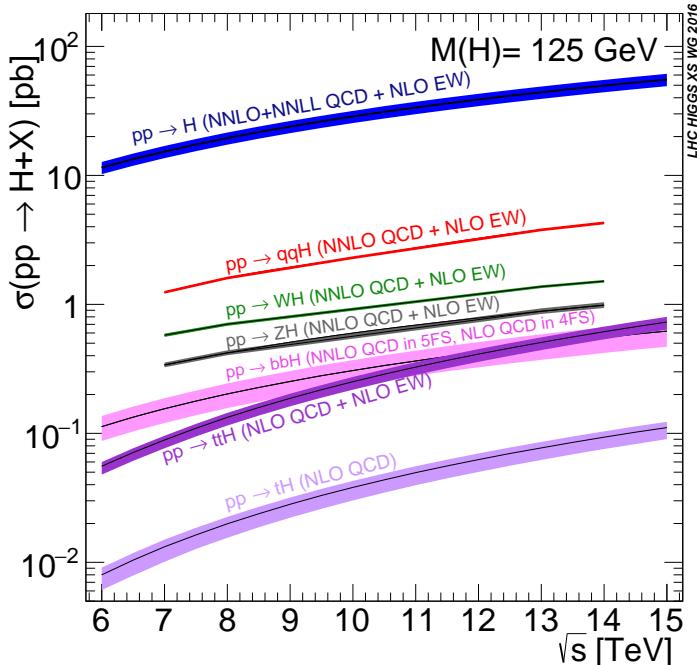


Figure 1.3: Higgs production cross sections as a function of center of mass energy (\sqrt{s}) at a pp collider[2].

650 In figure 1.3, note that gluon fusion has the largest cross section, while VBF is the second largest at
 651 approximately a factor of 10 smaller. The figure also includes the less commonly studied $b\bar{b}H$ and tH
 652 modes. The $b\bar{b}H$ and tH modes are not studied as commonly as $t\bar{t}H$ due to the larger background con-
 653 tributions and lower cross sections, respectively. At $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV, ggF production of a 125 GeV Higgs
 654 has a cross section of 19.47 pb, while VBF has a cross section of 1.601 pb[2]. The cross sections of all
 655 of the main Higgs production modes at this center of mass energy, as well as their uncertainties from
 656 varying the renormalization and factorization scales and PDFs, are summarized in table 1.1 for a 125 GeV
 657 Higgs.

Production mode	σ (pb)	QCD scale uncert. (%)	PDF + α_s uncert. (%)
Gluon fusion	19.47	+7.3 / - 8.0	3.1
Vector boson fusion	1.601	+0.3 / - 0.2	2.2
WH	0.7026	+0.6 / - 0.9	2.0
ZH	0.4208	+2.9 / - 2.4	1.7
$t\bar{t}H$	0.1330	+4.1 / - 9.2	4.3
$b\bar{b}H$	0.2021	+20.7 / - 22.3	
tH (t -channel)	0.01869	+7.3 / - 16.5	4.6
tH (s -channel)	1.214×10^{-3}	+2.8 / - 2.4	2.8

Table 1.1: Production cross sections for a 125 GeV Higgs boson at $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV with scale and PDF uncertainties [2].

658 1.3.2 HIGGS BRANCHING RATIOS

659 The fact that the Higgs couples more strongly to more massive particles is crucial for understanding its
 660 branching ratios. The width for Higgs decays to fermions is given in equation 1.14 [29].

$$\Gamma(H \rightarrow f\bar{f}) = \frac{N_c \sqrt{2} G_F m_f^2 m_H}{8\pi} \quad (1.14)$$

661 In this case, N_c is the number of colors, G_F is the Fermi constant, m_f is the mass of the fermion, and
 662 m_H is the mass of the Higgs. Note that the width scales with the square of the fermion mass. (This also
 663 assumes that the Higgs mass is large enough to decay with both the fermions on shell.)

664 The decay width to WW is given in equation 1.15 [29].

$$\Gamma(H \rightarrow W^+W^-) = \frac{\sqrt{2} G_F M_W^2 m_H}{16\pi} \frac{\sqrt{1-x_W}}{x_W} (3x_W^2 - 4x_W + 4) \quad (1.15)$$

665 where m_W is the mass of the W and $x_W = 4M_W^2/m_H^2$. To get the branching ratio to ZZ , the
 666 equation is divided by 2 to account for identical particles in the final state, and x_W is replaced with
 667 $x_Z = 4M_Z^2/m_H^2$. This is shown in equation 1.16 [29].

$$\Gamma(H \rightarrow ZZ) = \frac{\sqrt{2} G_F M_Z^2 m_H}{32\pi} \frac{\sqrt{1-x_Z}}{x_Z} (3x_Z^2 - 4x_Z + 4) \quad (1.16)$$

668 These formulas can also be visualized as a function of Higgs mass. Figure 1.4 shows the branching

669 ratios as a function of the Higgs mass.

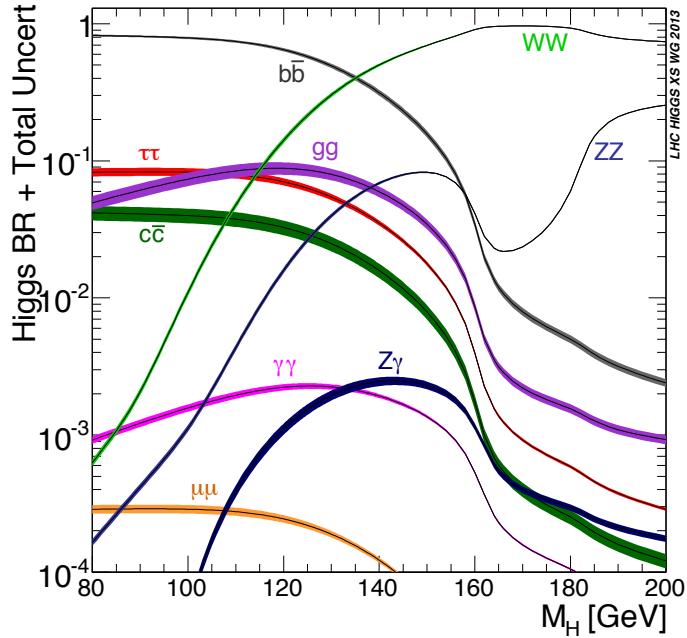


Figure 1.4: Higgs boson branching ratios as a function of m_H [2].

670 There are a few interesting features to note in this figure. First, note that at high Higgs masses, once
 671 on-shell production of both W and Z bosons is possible, these two decays are the dominant ones due to
 672 the large masses of the W/Z . Also note that the branching ratio to W s is twice that of Z s at these large
 673 masses due to the δ_V symmetry factor noted previously. At 125 GeV, the Higgs is accessible through
 674 many different decay modes. The largest branching ratio is the decay $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ at 58.24% [2]. This
 675 branching is larger than the WW/ZZ decays because one of the two bosons must be produced off-
 676 shell for $m_H = 125$ GeV. The second largest branching ratio is to WW^* at 21.37 % (before taking
 677 into account the branching ratios of the W). Table 1.2 summarizes the branching ratios for a 125 GeV
 678 Higgs. Note that there is in fact a Higgs branching ratio to $\gamma\gamma$ even though photons are massless. This
 679 decay happens through a loop (the largest contributions to the loop are top and W) which suppresses
 680 the branching ratio.

681 Note that the branching ratios alone do not tell the full story of which Higgs channels are the most
 682 sensitive. For example, a $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ search in gluon fusion production is incredibly difficult due to the

Decay	Branching ratio (%)
$b\bar{b}$	58.24
WW^*	21.37
gg	8.187
$\tau\tau$	6.272
$c\bar{c}$	2.891
ZZ^*	2.619
$\gamma\gamma$	0.2270
$Z\gamma$	0.1533
$\mu\mu$	0.02176

Table 1.2: Branching ratios for a 125 GeV Higgs boson[2].

large QCD dijet background at the LHC. However, in associated production of the Higgs, where a W or Z gives additional final state particles that can be used to reduce background, a search for $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ can be sensitive. The combinations of production and decay modes that are most commonly studied are summarized in table 1.3 [29].

Decay	Inclusive (incl. ggF)	VBF	WH/ZH	$t\bar{t}H$
$H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$	✓	✓	✓	✓
$H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$			✓	✓
$H \rightarrow \tau^+\tau^-$		✓		
$H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$	✓	✓	✓	
$H \rightarrow ZZ \rightarrow 4\ell$	✓			
$H \rightarrow Z\gamma \rightarrow \ell\ell\gamma$	very low			

Table 1.3: Possible channels for Higgs searches. Checkmarks denote the most sensitive production modes [29].

1.4 HIGGS PAIR PRODUCTION IN THE STANDARD MODEL

The Standard Model also allows for processes that produce two Higgs bosons in the final state, known as Higgs pair production or di-Higgs production. The two main production mechanisms are shown in figure 1.5.

The two diagrams in figure 1.5 interfere destructively with one another, resulting in a low overall cross section for di-Higgs production at the LHC. Nevertheless, Higgs pair production is quite interesting to study because it gives direct access to the λ parameter of the Higgs potential, also known as the Higgs self

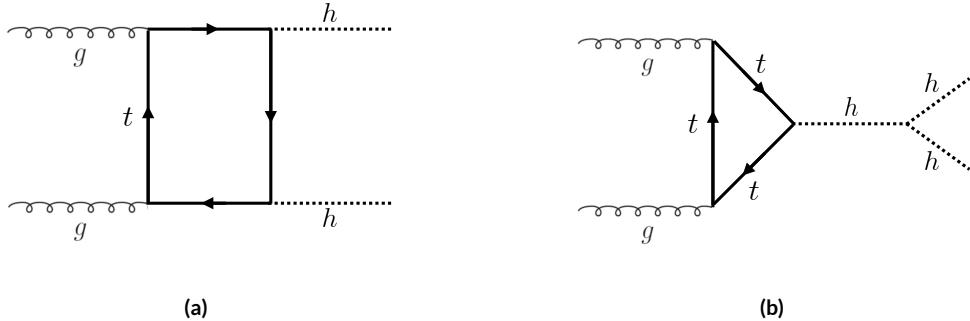


Figure 1.5: The two leading diagrams for Standard Model di-Higgs production at the LHC: (a) box diagram, (b) Higgs self coupling

coupling. The diagram in figure 1.5(b) is sensitive to this coupling through the triple Higgs vertex.

One can substitute the gluon fusion production of diagram 1.5(b) with any of the other production modes previously discussed. These other modes do not suffer from interference with the box diagram in figure 1.5(a) due to the presence of additional particles in the final state. They still have a lower cross section than the gluon fusion mode, however. The cross sections for di-Higgs production in the different modes, as well as their uncertainties, are shown in table 1.4 [30]. These are shown for $\sqrt{s} = 14$ TeV as the higher center of mass energy is more sensitive to this process. Note that the scale of cross section quoted is now in fb rather than pb.

Production mode	σ (fb)	Total uncert. (%)
Gluon fusion	33.89	+37.2 / - 27.8
Vector boson fusion	2.01	+7.6 / - 5.1
$W H H$	0.57	+3.7 / - 3.3
$Z H H$	0.42	+7.0 / - 5.5
$t\bar{t}H$	1.02	-

Table 1.4: Production cross sections for pair production of a 125 GeV Higgs boson at $\sqrt{s} = 14$ TeV with total uncertainty [30]. The uncertainties include QCD scale and PDF variations as well as uncertainties on α_S .

701

1.5 HIGGS PAIR PRODUCTION IN THEORIES BEYOND THE STANDARD MODEL

The Standard Model Higgs pair production cross section is rather small, and datasets on the scale of the full lifetime of the LHC will be required to obtain sensitive measurements of the Higgs self-coupling.

705 However, the discovery of the Higgs also gives particle physicists a new tool that can be exploited in the
 706 search for new physics beyond the Standard Model. In particular, Higgs pair production is a promising
 707 channel in the search for new physics. The cross section for di-Higgs production can be altered through
 708 both resonant and non-resonant production of Higgs pairs. In non-resonant production, di-Higgs pro-
 709 duction vertices can arise from the presence of a new strong sector and additional colored particles[48–
 710 50]. Figure 1.6 shows examples of the types of vertices that can arise. In the resonant case, new heavy
 711 particle can decay to Higgs pairs. Such new particles can include heavy Higgs bosons arising in two
 712 Higgs doublet models (2HDM) or Higgs portal models as well as heavy gravitons in Randall-Sundrum
 713 theories[3, 5, 48, 51–55]. Figure 1.7 shows a generic diagram for a heavy resonance decaying to two Higgs
 714 bosons. In the 2HDM, X corresponds to the heavy CP-even scalar H . In the Randall-Sundrum model,
 715 X corresponds to a heavy spin-2 graviton G .

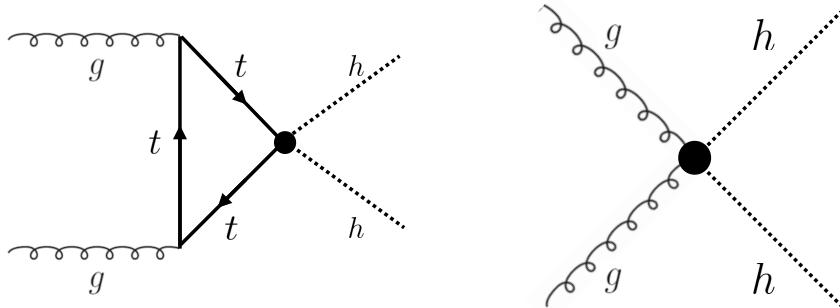


Figure 1.6: Diagrams with new vertices for non-resonant Higgs pair production arising in composite Higgs models

716 The next sections provide more detail on the phenomenology of resonant Higgs production in
 717 Randall-Sundrum and 2HDM models, as these models will later be tested in a dedicated search for reso-
 718 nant production of boosted Higgs pairs.

719 1.5.1 RANDALL-SUNDRUM GRAVITONS

720 The Randall-Sundrum model is a proposed solution to the hierarchy problem that posits a five-dimensional
 721 warped spacetime that contains two branes: one where the force of gravity is very strong and a second
 722 brane at the TeV scale corresponding to the known Standard Model sector [51]. In the theory, the
 723 branes are weakly coupled and the graviton probability function drops exponentially going from the

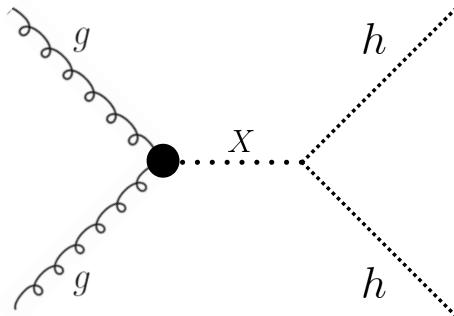


Figure 1.7: Generic Feynman diagram for resonant Higgs pair production in BSM theories

724 gravity brane to the SM brane, rendering gravity weak on the SM brane. The experimental consequence
 725 of this theory is a tower of widely spaced (in mass) Kaluza-Klein graviton resonances. In theories where
 726 the fermions are localized to the SM brane, production of gravitons from fermion pairs is suppressed
 727 and the primary mode of production is gluon fusion[3]. These gravitons have a substantial branching
 728 fraction to Higgs pairs, ranging from 6.43% for gravitons with a mass of 500 GeV to 7.66% at 3 TeV.
 729 Figure 1.8 shows the branching ratios of the spin-2 Randall Sundrum graviton (RSG) as a function of its
 730 mass. The predominant decays are to $t\bar{t}$ above the mass threshold for that channel.

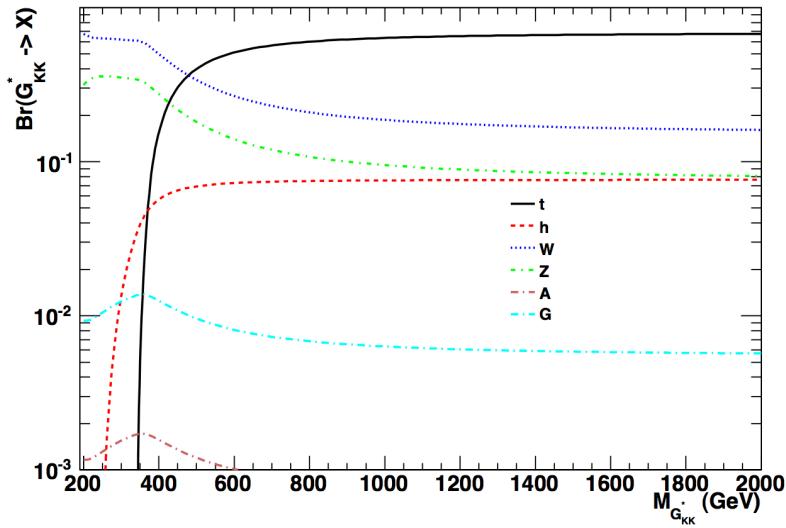


Figure 1.8: Branching ratios for a spin-2 Randall-Sundrum graviton as a function of mass computed in MadGraph with the CP3-Origins implementation [3, 4]

731 These models have two free parameters - the mass of the graviton and a curvature parameter k . Typ-

732 ically, rather than k , the theory is parameterized using $c \equiv k/\bar{M}_{\text{pl}}$, where \bar{M}_{pl} is the reduced Planck
 733 mass. The cross section for production of the RSG decreases as a function of mass and is strongly depen-
 734 dent on the gluon PDF. The increase in center of mass energy from 8 to 13 TeV in LHC Run 2 greatly
 735 increases the cross section at higher mass. Figure 1.9 shows the cross section as a function of graviton
 736 mass at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV for RSG models with $c = 1.0$ and $c = 2.0$.

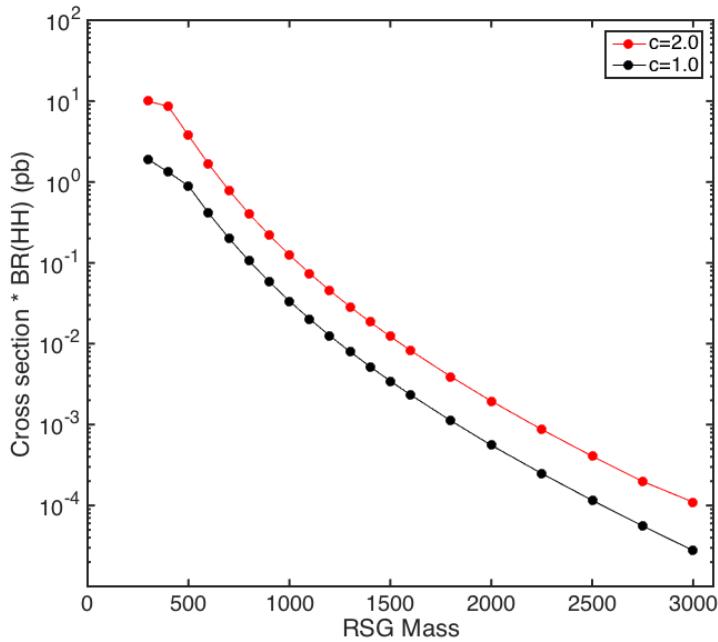


Figure 1.9: $\sigma \times \text{BR}(HH)$ for RSG as a function of mass computed in MadGraph with the CP3-Origins implementation [3, 4]

737 Another interesting feature of the theory is that the width of the graviton increases with both c and
 738 m_G . Figure 1.10 shows the graviton width for both $c = 1.0$ and $c = 2.0$ as a function of mass. In
 739 $c = 1.0$, the width starts at 8.365 GeV for a mass of 300 GeV and increases to 187.2 GeV at a mass of
 740 3 TeV. Similarly, with $c = 2.0$, the width starts at 33.46 GeV for $m_G = 300$ GeV and increases to
 741 748.8 GeV at a mass of 3 TeV.

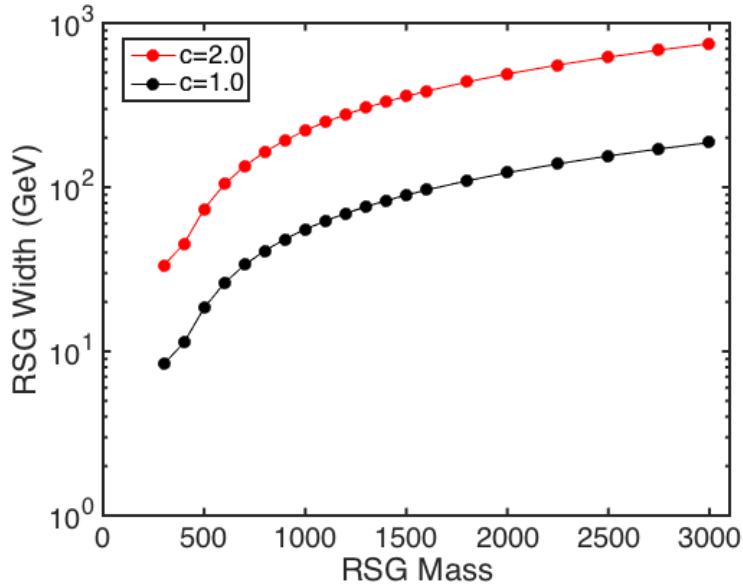


Figure 1.10: RSG width as a function of mass computed in MadGraph with the CP3-Origins implementation [3, 4]

742 1.5.2 TWO HIGGS DOUBLET MODELS

743 In Two Higgs Doublet Models (2HDM), a second complex scalar doublet is added to SM[5, 53, 54]. In
 744 this case, all four degrees of freedom in the second doublet correspond to new particles, meaning that
 745 there are five total scalars from the two Higgs doublets - h (light CP-even Higgs), H (heavy CP-even
 746 Higgs), A (heavy CP-odd Higgs), and H^\pm (charged Higgs). The model is parameterized by two main
 747 parameters. The first, $\tan \beta \equiv \frac{v_2}{v_1}$, is the ratio of the vacuum expectation values of the two Higgs dou-
 748 blets (where v_1 corresponds to the v in the SM Higgs model described above). The second parameter
 749 is α , a mixing angle between the heavy and light Higgs fields. Models are also often parameterized with
 750 $\cos(\beta - \alpha)$ rather than α directly. The limit where $\cos(\beta - \alpha) = 0$ is called the alignment limit, and
 751 it is in this limit that the light Higgs h has the same couplings as a Standard Model Higgs.

752 2HDM models are usually separated into two main types - Type I and Type II. In Type I models, the
 753 charged fermions only couple to the second Higgs doublet, leading to a fermiophobic light Higgs. In
 754 Type II models, up-type quarks couple to the first doublet while down-type quarks couple to the second
 755 doublet. One specific realization of a Type II 2HDM is the Minimal Supersymmetric Standard Model
 756 (MSSM).

757 Resonant di-Higgs production in this model can proceed through decays of the heavy CP-even Higgs
 758 $H \rightarrow hh$. The branching ratio for $H \rightarrow hh$ depends on the model type as well as the values of $\tan \beta$
 759 and $\cos(\beta - \alpha)$. Figure 1.11 shows the branching ratios as a function of the mass of the heavy scalar H for
 760 both Type I and Type II models. Depending on the type of model hh can be a substantial fraction of the
 761 decays of H .

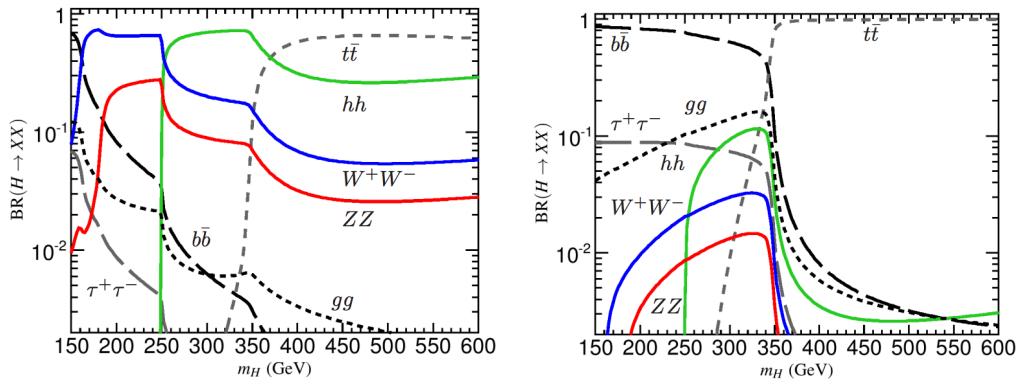


Figure 1.11: Branching ratios for heavy Higgs H in Type I (left) and Type II (right) 2HDM models with $\tan \beta = 1.5$ and $\cos(\beta - \alpha) = 0.1$ (Type I) (0.01 for Type II). [5]

762 1.6 CONCLUSION

763 Studying the Higgs sector is essential for understanding the details of how mass arises in the Standard
 764 Model and how the electroweak symmetry is broken. The discovery of the Higgs boson also opens the
 765 door for its use as a tool to search for new physics, and Higgs pair production is an ideal candidate for
 766 this study. Even if no BSM physics is found in Higgs pair production, searches for Higgs pairs will put
 767 constraints on the Higgs self coupling and thus further knowledge of the Standard Model and the details
 768 of the Higgs potential.

This is some random quote to start off the chapter.

Firstname lastname

2

769

770

771

The ATLAS detector and the Large Hadron Collider

772 This chapter presents an overview of the experimental systems used to conduct the measurements pre-
773 sented in this thesis. First, a brief overview of the accelerator, the Large Hadron Collider, will be given.
774 In this section, the accelerator conditions relevant to data-taking are presented as well. Next, an overview
775 of the ATLAS experiment is given. The basics of each sub-detector's role are summarized, as well as the
776 details of the datasets accumulated. Then, a brief interlude on the ATLAS Muon New Small Wheel up-
777 grade is presented. While this new detector does not have a direct impact on any of the datasets taken
778 so far, it will have an impact on future analyses and the work done on it is briefly summarized here. Fi-
779 nally, an overview of object reconstruction in ATLAS is given. While the details of all of the algorithms
780 will not be presented in detail, aspects of the reconstruction performance such as object resolutions are
781 shown as these are relevant to the two studies presented later in this thesis.

782 2.1 THE LARGE HADRON COLLIDER

783 The Large Hadron Collider (LHC) is a proton-proton collider at the CERN laboratory in Geneva,
784 Switzerland[56]. It is designed for a maximum collision center of mass energy of $\sqrt{s} = 14 \text{ TeV}$ and
785 has a circumference of 26.7 kilometers. Four main experiments are located at the interaction points (IP)
786 of the accelerator: ATLAS (A Toroidal LHC ApparatuS), CMS (the Compact Muon Solenoid), ALICE
787 (A Large Ion Collider Experiment), and LHCb [7, 57–59]. The studies performed in this thesis were all
788 completed with the ATLAS detector.

789 Figure 2.1 shows a schematic of the LHC ring and the various experiments.

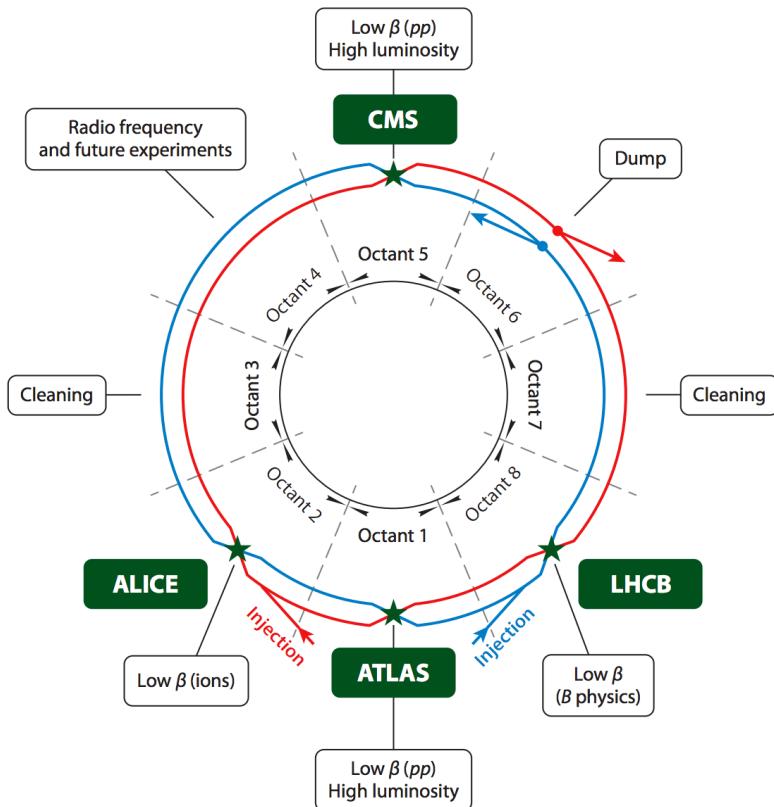


Figure 2.1: A schematic view of the LHC ring [6]

790 One of the most interesting features of the LHC is in its magnet design. Because the tunnel does not
791 have room for separate superconducting magnets for each of the beam pipes, the LHC employs a twin-
792 bore magnet design. Each magnet must hold an 8.3 Tesla magnetic field in order to bend the proton

793 beams at $\sqrt{s} = 14$ TeV. The superconducting magnets are cooled to a temperature of 1.9 Kelvin with
 794 superfluid helium.

795 **2.1.1 INSTANTANEOUS LUMINOSITY**

796 The rate of physics events expected from the accelerator is dependent on the instantaneous luminosity
 797 of the machine and the cross section of the physics process, $R_{\text{events}} = L\sigma$. Here, R_{events} is the number
 798 of events per second, L is the instantaneous luminosity of the machine, and σ is the cross section for the
 799 physics process being measured. The instantaneous luminosity of the LHC is determined by numerous
 800 factors related to machine conditions. Equation 2.1 gives the equation for instantaneous luminosity of
 801 Gaussian beam profile [6].

$$L = \frac{N_b^2 n_b f_{\text{rev}} \gamma_r}{4\pi \epsilon_n \beta^*} F \quad (2.1)$$

802 The LHC collides protons in bunches, and in the above equation N_b is the number of protons per
 803 bunch while n_b is the number of bunches per beam. Nominally, the LHC can hold up to 2808 pro-
 804 ton bunches. f_{rev} is the revolution frequency. ϵ_n is the normalized transverse beam emittance, a mea-
 805 surement of the average spread of the particles position-momentum space which has the dimension of
 806 length. β^* is the value of the *beta* function for the beam at the interaction point. It relates the emmi-
 807 tance to the Gaussian width of the beam with $\sigma_{\text{beam}} = \sqrt{\epsilon \cdot \beta}$. F is a reduction factor that corrects for
 808 the fact that the beams are colliding at an angle at the IP.

809 Another way of writing the instantaneous luminosity is shown in equation 2.2. In this case, the in-
 810 stantaneous luminosity is written as the ratio of the rate of inelastic collisions with the inelastic cross
 811 section[60].

$$L = \frac{R_{\text{inel}}}{\sigma_{\text{inel}}} = \frac{\mu n_b f_{\text{rev}}}{\sigma_{\text{inel}}} \quad (2.2)$$

812 In this case, μ is the average number of interactions per bunch crossing in the accelerator. μ is a useful
 813 parameter for characterizing the amount of activity recorded in an experiment. As the instantaneous

814 luminosity and thus μ increase, there are more interactions per bunch crossing and more activity in the
 815 detector. This is often characterized with $\langle \mu \rangle$, the measured per bunch crossing μ value averaged over
 816 all bunch crossings. The interactions inside each bunch crossing that are not the main physics process of
 817 interest are often referred to as “pileup” interactions, and $\langle \mu \rangle$ is a measurement of the level of pileup in
 818 the detector.

819 2.1.2 EVOLUTION OF MACHINE CONDITIONS

820 This thesis uses datasets taken at three different center of mass energies: $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV data taken in the
 821 year 2011, $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV data taken in the year 2012, and $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV dataa taken in the year 2015. In
 822 addition to increasing center of mass energy, the instananeous luminosity and parameters that determine
 823 it were evolving. Table 2.1 summarizes that machine conditions in each of these datasets.

	2011	2012	2015	Design
\sqrt{s} [TeV]	7	8	13	14
Number of bunches	1380	1380	1825	2808
Max. protons per bunch	1.45×10^{11}	1.7×10^{11}		1.15×10^{11}
Bunch spacing [ns]	50	50	25	25
Max. instantaneous luminosity [$\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$]	3.7×10^{33}	7.7×10^{33}	5×10^{33}	10^{34}
β^* [m]	1.0	0.6	0.8	0.55
$\langle \mu \rangle$	11.6	20.7	13.7	-

Table 2.1: Evolution of LHC machine conditions [31, 32]

824 2.2 THE ATLAS DETECTOR

825 The ATLAS detector is a multi-purpose particle detector experiment at the LHC’s Point 1 [7]. It has
 826 nearly 4π coverage in solid angle around the interaction point. It consists of an inner detector for mea-
 827 suring charged particles, electromagnetic and hadronic calorimeters, and a muon spectrometer. Fig-
 828 ure 2.2 gives an overview of the detector.

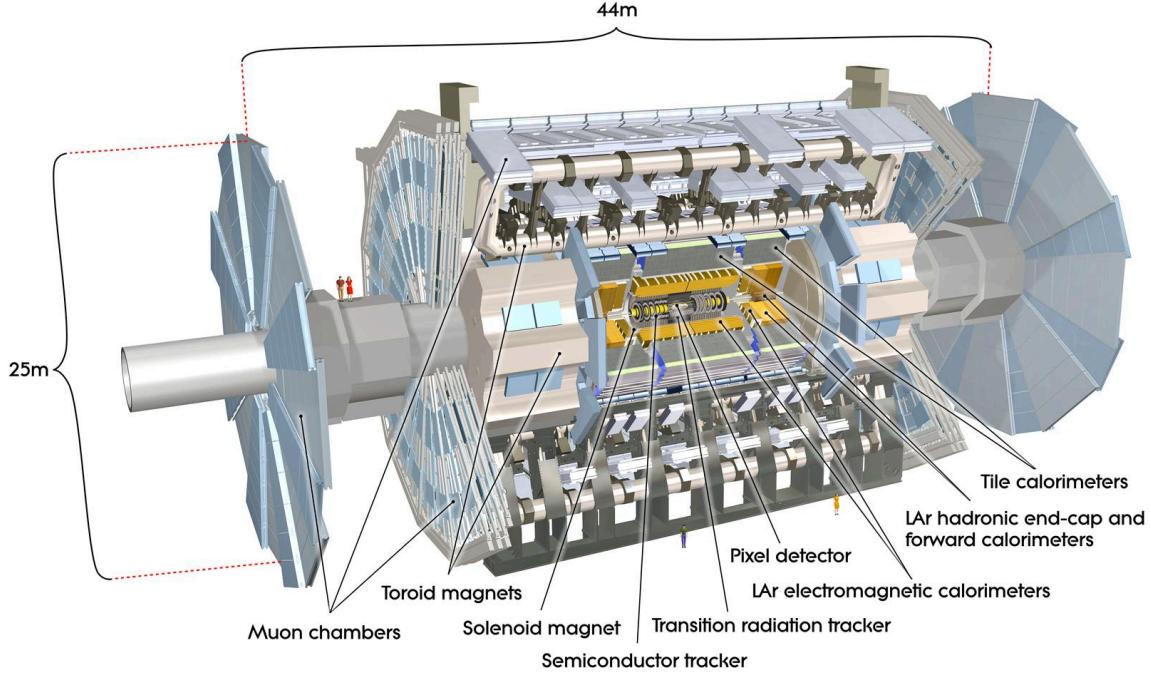


Figure 2.2: A full diagram of the ATLAS detector [7]

829 2.2.1 COORDINATE SYSTEM

830 Before defining the properties of the individual detectors, it is important to establish the coordinate
 831 system used. Figure 2.3 shows a schematic of the coordinate system. The azimuthal plane (perpendicular
 832 to the beam line) is defined as the x - y plane. The angle in this plane is referred to as ϕ . The angle relative
 833 to the beam axis is referred to as θ . Rather than using θ directly as a coordinate, the experiment often
 834 uses the pseudorapidity η . η is defined in equation 2.3.

$$\eta = \ln \left(\tan \left(\frac{\theta}{2} \right) \right) \quad (2.3)$$

835 Pseudorapidity is the massless approximation of rapidity, the angle used to parameterize boosts in
 836 special relativity. This is important for two reasons. First, it means that differences in η are Lorentz in-
 837 variant. Second, particle production is roughly constant in pseudorapidity. Particles with η close to zero
 838 are referred to as “central”, while those at high $|\eta|$ are called “forward”. In general, two main detector

839 topologies can be seen in figure 2.2. There are “barrel” elements, which surround the beam line cylind-
 840 drically and are in the central region of the detector. In the forward region, there are “endcap” regions
 841 which are arranged as disks perpendicular to the beam line.

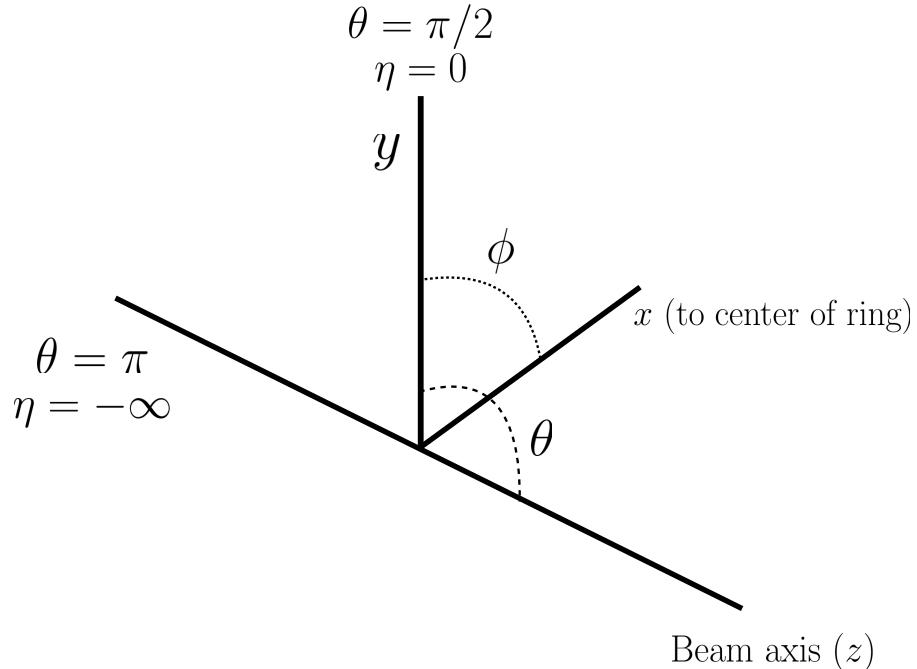


Figure 2.3: The ATLAS coordinate system

842 2.2.2 INNER DETECTOR

843 The ATLAS Inner Detector (ID) system is built for precision tracking of charged particles. It covers the
 844 range $|\eta| < 2.5$. In this range, approximately 1000 particles are generated every bunch crossing in the
 845 detector. This requires having fine granularity to achieve the resolutions required for good momentum
 846 measurement and vertex reconstruction.

847 The ID consists of three sub-components: the pixel detector, semiconductor tracker (SCT), and trans-
 848 sition radiation tracker (TRT). It is surrounded by a solenoid providing a 2 T axial magnetic field which
 849 bends particles in the transverse plane to allow for momentum measurement. Figure 2.4 shows the layout
 850 of each of these components.

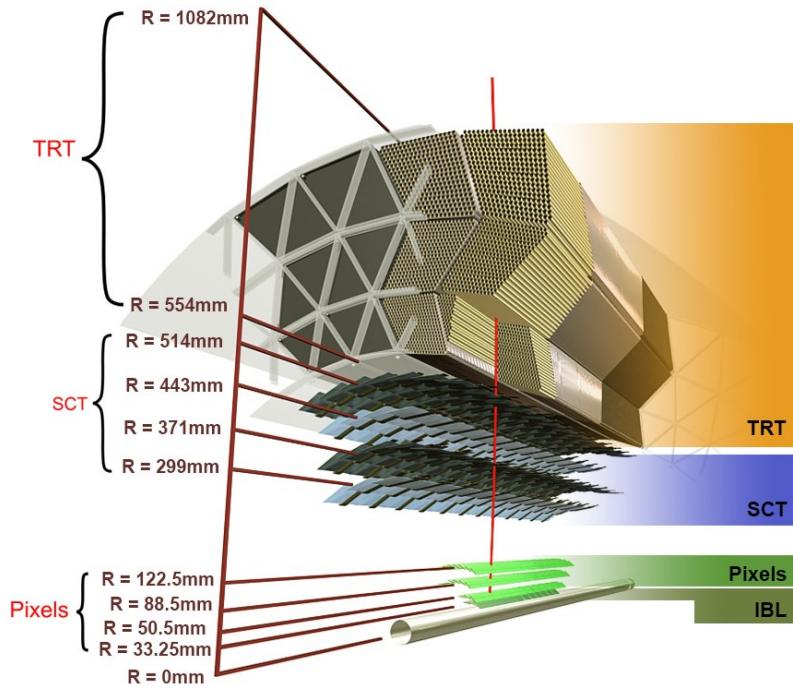


Figure 2.4: Layout of the ATLAS Inner Detector system [8]

851 PIXEL DETECTOR

852 The pixel detector is the first detector particles traverse after being generated in proton collisions and is
 853 the most granular detector. Its operation is crucial for precision tracking and vertex reconstruction as
 854 well as higher level object reconstruction like tagging of jets from b -quarks. The basic sensing element in
 855 this subdetector is a silicon pixel detector. The operating principle for the silicon pixels is that of a p - n
 856 junction. When a charged particle passes through, it creates electron-hole pairs that are then separated
 857 by the electric field. The sensors are $250 \mu\text{m}$ thick and use oxygenated n -type wafers with readout pixels
 858 on the n^+ side of the detector [7]. Overall, the pixel detector has 1744 sensors and 80.4 million readout
 859 channels.

860 In the barrel region, the pixel detector has three concentric layers of sensors surrounding the beam-
 861 line. In the endcap region, it consists of disks perpendicular to the beam axis. The detector is segmented
 862 in the R - ϕ plane and in z . Usually, three pixel layers are crossed by a charged particle track. The intrinsic
 863 accuracies of the sensors are $10 \mu\text{m}$ in R - ϕ and $115 \mu\text{m}$ in z (or R for the endcap).

864 **INSERTABLE B-LAYER**

865 In Run 2, a new innermost pixel layer, known as the insertable B-layer (IBL), was added to the Inner
866 Detector [61]. This layer was added to cope with the higher luminosities planned in LHC Run 2 and
867 at the high luminosity HL-LHC. Additionally it improves tracking position resolution which in turn
868 improves the vertexing and b -tagging capabilities in ATLAS. The detector sits directly on a new beam
869 pipe, only 33.25 mm away from the collision points in the azimuthal plane.

870 **SEMICONDUCTOR TRACKER (SCT)**

871 The semiconductor tracker (SCT) consists of silicon microstrips and comprises the next four layers of
872 the ID. This sub-detector has 6.4cm long sensors that are daisy-chained into strips with a strip pitch of
873 $80 \mu\text{m}$ [7]. Some of the strips have a small stereo angle to allow for measurement of both angular coor-
874 dinates. In total there are 6.3 million readout channels. The intrinsic accuracies are $17 \mu\text{m}$ in $R\text{-}\phi$ and
875 $580 \mu\text{m}$ in z (or R in the endcap).

876 **TRANSITION RADIATION TRACKER (TRT)**

877 The transition radiation tracker (TRT) serves two purposes. First, it consists of 4mm diameter straw
878 tubes filled with a 70/27/3% gas mixture of xenon, carbon dioxide, and oxygen to provide tracking of
879 charged particles. Particles typically have 36 TRT straw tube hits per track. The material in between
880 the straws is designed to induce transition radiation which can be useful for particle identification. As
881 particles pass between media with different dielectric constants, they emit transition radiation that can
882 cause additional showers in the TRT. In particular it is useful for discrimination between electrons and
883 pions or other charged hadrons, as the amount of transition radiation is proportional to the Lorentz
884 factor of the particle.

885 **2.2.3 CALORIMETERS**

886 The calorimeter system consists of two main sub-components: a fine granularity electromagnetic calorime-
887 ter tailored for the measurement of photons and electrons and multiple coarser hadronic calorimeters

888 dedicated to the measurement of hadronic showers [7]. The calorimeter system has broader coverage
889 than the inner detector, covering the region out to $|\eta| < 4.9$. It is also designed to deliver good contain-
890 ment of showers so as to limit leakage into the muon system. Figure 2.5 shows the layout of the calorime-
891 ter system.

892 Both the electromagnetic and hadronic calorimeters are sampling calorimeters. They alternate active
893 material for energy measurement with passive material for energy absorption. The materials used for
894 each purpose vary based on the type of calorimeter and its location in the detector.

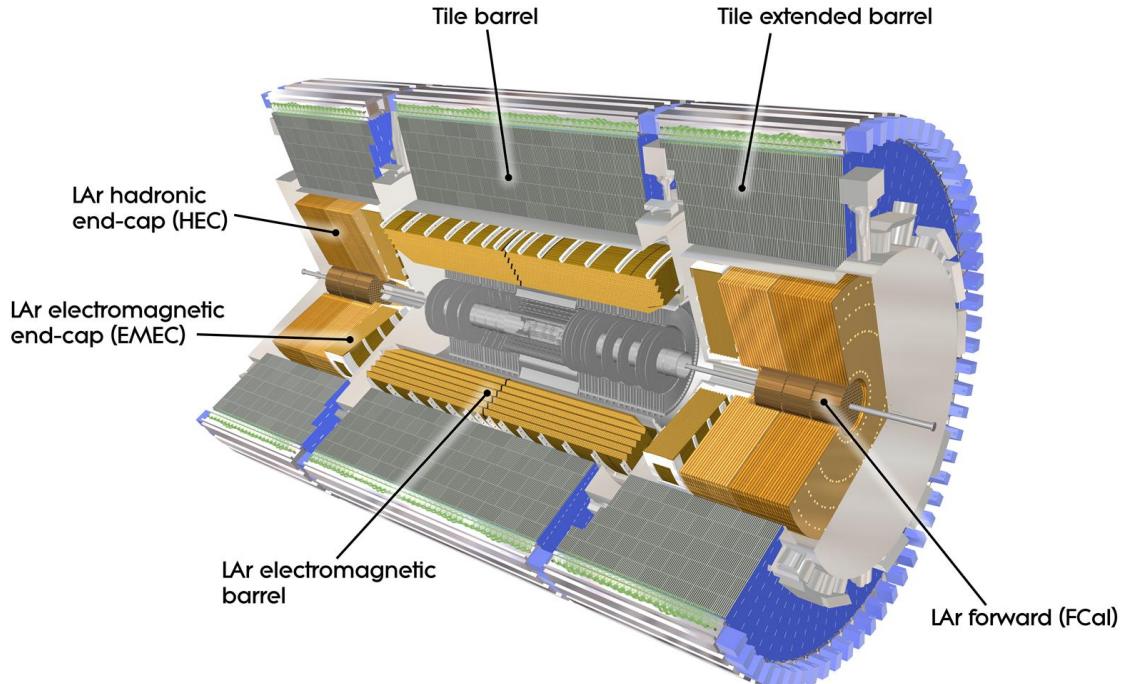


Figure 2.5: Layout of the ATLAS calorimeter system [7]

895 ELECTROMAGNETIC CALORIMETER

896 The electromagnetic calorimeter (EM calorimeter) use liquid Argon (LAr) as its active material and lead
897 as its passive material. It is arrange in an accordion geometry to increase the absorption area while still
898 allowing it to have no azimuthal cracks (complete symmetry in ϕ). The EM calorimeter is divided into a

899 barrel portion that extends to $|\eta| < 1.475$ and an endcap portion going from $1.375 < |\eta| < 3.2$. The
900 region where these two units overlap is called the “transition region”.

901 In order to provide good containment the calorimeter depth must be optimized. Typically, for elec-
902 tromagnetic calorimeters the depth is measured in radiation lengths. In general, the intensity of a par-
903 ticle beam attenuates exponentially in distance with a constant equal to the radiation length. That is,
904 $I(x) = I_0 e^{-x/X_0}$, where I is the intensity, x is the distance traveled, and X_0 is the radiation length.
905 The ATLAS EM calorimeter is designed to have > 22 radiation lengths in the barrel and > 24 in the
906 endcap [7].

907 **HADRONIC CALORIMETERS**

908 There are three types of hadronic calorimeters present in ATLAS: the tile calorimeter (TileCal), hadronic
909 endcap (HEC), and forward calorimeter (FCal). Each one is optimized for stopping of hadronic showers
910 and the materials chosen are specific to their placement in the detector.

911 The TileCal is a scintillating tile calorimeter placed directly outside the EM calorimeter. It uses steel as
912 the absorber and plastic scintillator tiles as the active material. It has coverage in the barrel at $|\eta| < 1.0$
913 and in the “extended barrel” region of $0.8 < |\eta| < 1.7$.

914 The HEC had two wheels perpendicular to the beam line per endcap and is located directly behind
915 the EM calorimeter endcap modules. The HEC covers the region from $1.5 < |\eta| < 3.2$, overlapping
916 slightly with both the tile calorimeter and the forward calorimeter. Like the EM calorimeter, it uses liq-
917 uid Argon as the active material, but it uses copper as the absorber.

918 The FCal covers the most forward regions of the calorimeter system, extending to the region of $3.1 <$
919 $|\eta| < 4.9$. It again uses liquid argon as its active material. For absorber, it consists of an innermost
920 module made of copper followed by a module made of tungsten.

921 The hadronic equivalent of radiation length is called the interaction length and is denoted as λ . In the
922 barrel, the hadronic calorimeter depth is approximately 9.7λ , while in the endcap is is 10λ . The outer
923 supports contribute an additional 1.3λ . This is been shown to be sufficient to limit punch-through of
924 showers to the muon system [7].

925 2.2.4 MUON SPECTROMETER

926 The muon spectrometer is dedicated to measuring the momentum and position of muons. It consists
927 of tracking and trigger chambers which are unique in the barrel and endcap regions. The magnetic field
928 for bending of muons is provided by a system of three large air-core toroid magnets (from which ATLAS
929 derives its name.) These magnets provide 1.5 to 5.5 Tm of bending power at $0 < |\eta| < 1.4$ and approx-
930 imately 1 to 7.5 Tm in the endcap region of $1.6 < |\eta| < 2.7$. The entire muon system covers the range
931 $0 < |\eta| < 2.7$. Monitored drift tubes (MDTs) are used for tracking in the barrel and the two outer
932 layers of the endcap, while cathode strip chambers (CSCs) are used to provide tracking in the innermost
933 endcap wheel. In the barrel, resistive plate chambers (RPCs) are used as trigger chambers while thin gap
934 chambers (TGCs) are used in the endcap. Figure 2.6 shows the layout of the ATLAS muon system. The
935 entire muon system is designed with the specification of providing a 10% momentum resolution for a
936 1 TeV muon.

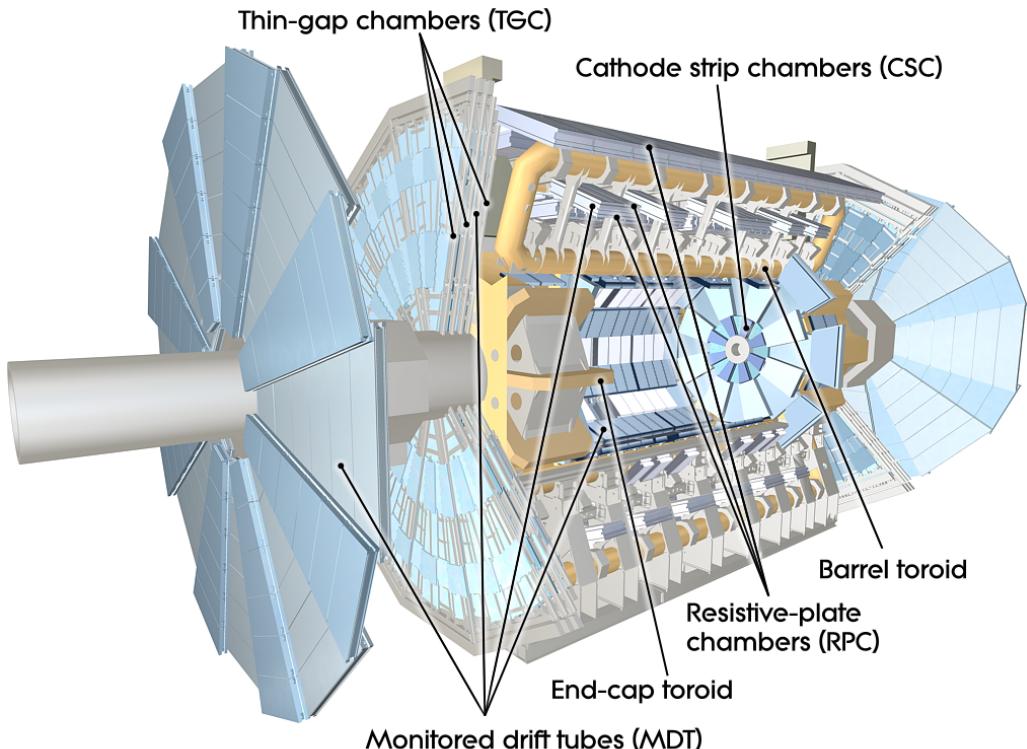


Figure 2.6: Layout of the ATLAS muon system [7]

937 MONITORED DRIFT TUBES (MDTs)

938 The monitored drift tubes (MDTs) are aluminum 3cm diameter tubes filled with a 93/7 % mixture of
939 Argon and CO₂, with trace amounts of water. As a charged particle traverses the tube, it ionizes the gas
940 and the ions drift to a wire at the center of the tube. The radial distance of traversal of the particle in the
941 tube is determined by the drift time of the electrons, allowing for fine position resolution. The tubes
942 have an average resolution of 80 μm per tube and a maximum drift time of approximately 700ns. The
943 tubes are oriented so that they give precision measurement in η and run along ϕ . They cover $|\eta| < 2.7$,
944 except in the innermost layer of the endcap where they only go to $|\eta| < 2.0$ [7].

945 CATHODE STRIP CHAMBERS (CSCs)

946 The cathode strip chambers cover a narrow window of the innermost endcap region at $2.0 < |\eta| <$
947 2.7. In this region the background rates in the cavern are particularly high and the CSCs are designed
948 to handle these higher rates. The CSCs are multiwire proportional chambers with wires pointing in
949 the radial direction (away from the beam pipe). The wire serves as an anode and there are two types of
950 segmented cathode strip, one perpendicular to the wires which gives the precision measurement and one
951 parallel which provides the transverse coordinate. It has an 80/20 gas mixture of Argon and CO₂ [7].

952 RESISTIVE PLATE CHAMBERS (RPCs)

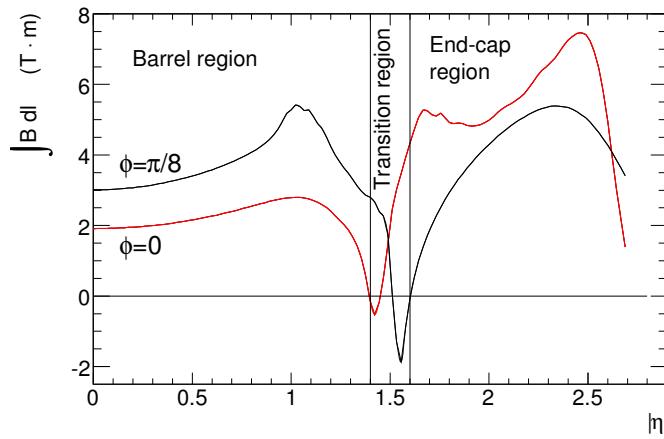
953 The resistive plate chambers (RPCs) are gaseous electrode-plate detectors covering the region $|\eta| <$
954 1.05. They consist of two resistive plates separated by a distance of 2 mm. The gas mixture used is a
955 94.7/5/0.3% mixture of C₂H₂F₄, Iso-C₄H₁₀, and SF₆. It has readout strips with a pitch of 23-35 mm
956 for both η and ϕ measurement and thus provides measurement of the azimuthal coordinate in the barrel
957 that the MDTs do not. The thin gas gap allows for a quick response time which makes it ideal for use in
958 the trigger. There are three layers of RPCs which are referred to as the three trigger stations. They allwo
959 for both a low p_T and high p_T trigger. The coincidence of hits in the innermost chambers allows for
960 triggering of muons between 6 and 9 GeV, while the outermost layer allows the trigger to select high
961 momentum tracks in the range of 9 to 35 GeV [7].

962 THIN GAP CHAMBERS (TGCs)

963 The thin gap chambers (TGCs) are multiwire proportional chambers where the wire to cathode dis-
964 tance (1.4mm) is smaller than the wire-to-wire distance (1.8 mm). They contain a gas mixture of CO₂
965 and *n*-pentane and use a hih electric field to gain good time resolution. They serve two functions in the
966 end-cap system. First, they serve as the trigger chambers. Second, they also provide azimuthal coordi-
967 nate measurement which the MDTs do not. They sit on the inner and middle layers of the endcap. The
968 outermost layer's azimuthal coordinate is determined by extrapolation [7].

969 2.2.5 MAGNET SYSTEM

970 As mentioned previously, there are two independent magnet systems in ATLAS. The first is a 2 T solenoid
971 field in the inner detector which provides bending in the azimuthal plane. The second is an approxi-
972 mately 0.5 T toroidal field in the muon system which provides bending in $|\eta|$. Figure 2.7 shows the pre-
973 dicted field integral as a function of $|\eta|$ [7].



974 **Figure 2.7:** Predicted field integral as a function of $|\eta|$ for the ATLAS magnet system [7]

974 2.2.6 TRIGGER SYSTEM

975 The ATLAS trigger system searches for signatures of muons, electrons, photons, hadronically decay-
976 ing τ leptons, and jets in order to save these events for further analysis. The trigger system in ATLAS

977 is designed to reduce the maximum LHC event rate of 40 MHz to a more reasonable rate that can be
 978 recorded. The trigger first consists of a fast, hardware based system called the Level-1 (L1) trigger. The
 979 L1 trigger consists of independent dedicated detector sub-components that can seed regions of in-
 980 terest (RoIs) for further analysis downstream. For muons, the RPCs and TGCs are used, while in the
 981 calorimeter coarsely grained sections of calorimeter cells called towers are used. Once regions of interest
 982 are seeded, a software based system called the High Level Trigger (HLT) is used to reconstruct objects
 983 and integrate information from different parts of the detector. In Run 1 of ATLAS, the HLT consisted
 984 of two separate stages: the level 2 (L2) trigger and the event filter (EF).

985 The maximum trigger rate that the L1 trigger can handle is 75 kHz. In the HLT, the rate of events
 986 written to disk is approximately 200 Hz. Figure 2.8 shows the trigger rates for different L1 triggers in
 987 2012 and 2015 for ATLAS [9].

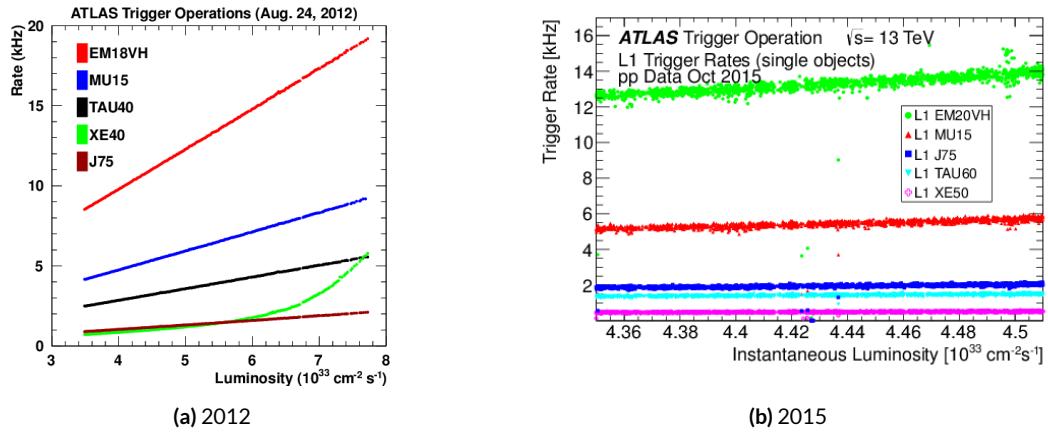


Figure 2.8: ATLAS trigger rates for Level-1 triggers as a function of instantaneous luminosity in 2012 and 2015 operation. These are single object triggers for electromagnetic clusters (EM), muons (MU), jets (J), missing energy (XE), and τ leptons (TAU). The threshold of the trigger is given in the name in GeV. [9]

988 2.2.7 ATLAS DATASETS

989 ATLAS has collected data at center of mass energies of 7, 8, and 13 TeV. Figure 2.9 shows the integrated
 990 luminosity as a function of time for each of the three collected datasets. At $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV, ATLAS
 991 recorded 5.08 fb^{-1} . Increased instantaneous luminosity in 2012 led to a larger dataset of 21.3 fb^{-1}
 992 recorded at $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV. After Long Shutdown 1 (LS1) of the LHC and a restart in 2015, ATLAS

993 recorded 3.9 fb^{-1} of data at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$. [10, 11]

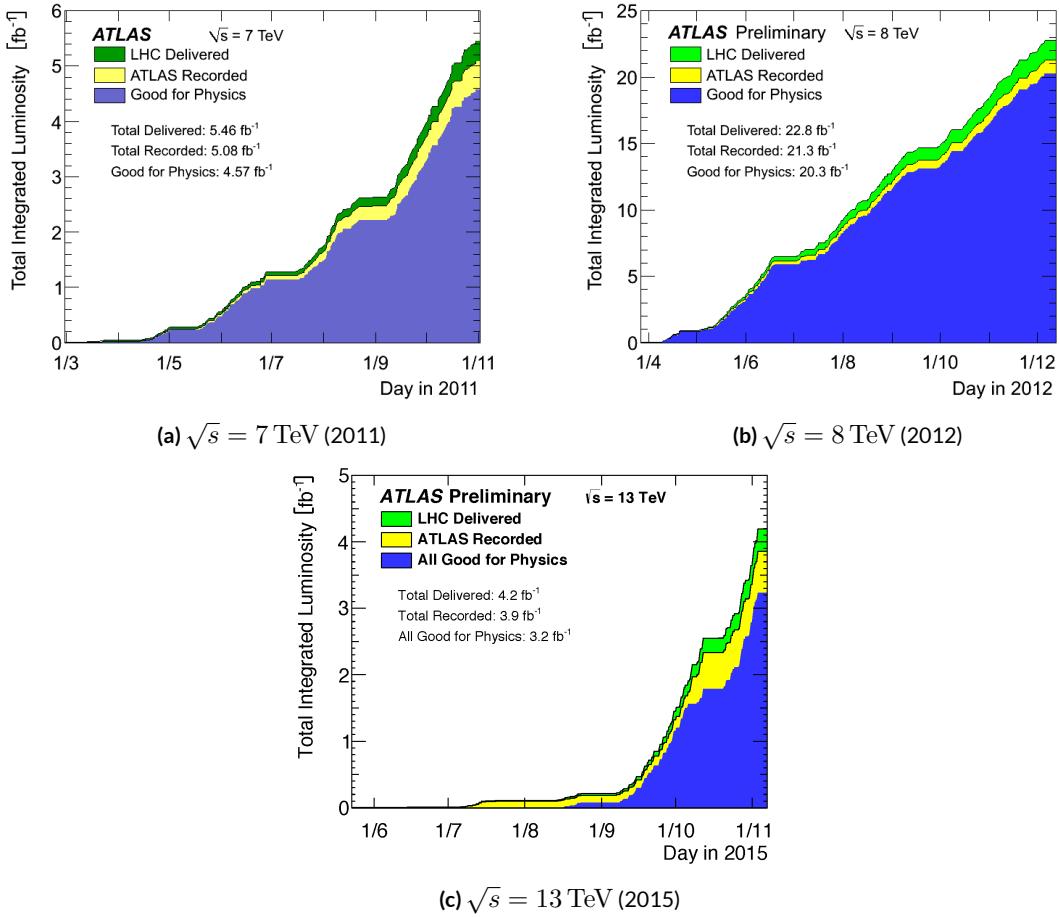


Figure 2.9: Instantaneous luminosity as a function of time for data recorded by ATLAS at different center of mass energies [10, 11]

994 2.2.8 DETECTOR PERFORMANCE

995 Table 2.2 summarizes the design requirements for each of the different sub-detectors. This table shows
 996 the energy and momentum resolution of each tracking, calorimetry, and muon measurements.

997 2.3 THE ATLAS MUON NEW SMALL WHEEL UPGRADE

998 As the LHC continues operation, it is scheduled to be upgraded in several phases to allow it to reach
 999 higher instantaneous luminosities and thus collect larger datasets. These conditions will open new doors

	Required resolution
Tracking	$\sigma_{p_T}/p_T = 0.05\% p_T \oplus 1\%$
EM calorimetry	$\sigma_E/E = 10\%/\sqrt{E} \oplus 0.7\%$
Hadronic calorimetry	
Barrel and end-cap	$\sigma_E/E = 50\%/\sqrt{E} \oplus 3\%$
Forward	$\sigma_E/E = 100\%/\sqrt{E} \oplus 10\%$
Muon spectrometer	σ_{p_T}/p_T at $p_T = 1$ TeV

Table 2.2: Performance requirements for the ATLAS detector [7].

for study of rare physics processes but will also present interesting challenges that must be faced. ATLAS will require new detector technologies to cope with the increased background rates in the cavern in these high luminosity conditions. One such upgrade, scheduled to be installed during Long Shutdown 2 (LS2) of the LHC in 2018, is the ATLAS Muon New Small Wheel (NSW) upgrade [12]. The NSW will replace the innermost end-cap wheel of the muon system with new technologies, as this is the part of the muon detector closest to the beam and thus suffers from the highest rates.

2.3.1 MOTIVATION

The motivation of the NSW is two-fold. First, the objective is to alleviate the decreased tracking efficiency that comes in a high rate environment. As figure 2.10, at the LHC design luminosity both the efficiency of recording hits and reconstructing track segments in the MDTs decreases at the LHC design luminosity.

Second, the NSW will work to alleviate the rate of fake triggers arising in the endcap. Figure 2.11 shows the extrapolated trigger rates as a function of the p_T threshold with and without the NSW upgrade. As the figure shows, the NSW upgrade will reduce the trigger rate by an order of magnitude compared to the current endcap trigger system.

2.3.2 NSW DETECTOR TECHNOLOGIES

The NSW will use two new detector technologies - micromesh gaseous structure detectors (micromegas) and small-strip thin gap chambers (sTGCs) [12, 62]. Unlike the previous detectors, both of these detector technologies can be used for tracking or trigger. However, the micromegas is more suited to tracking

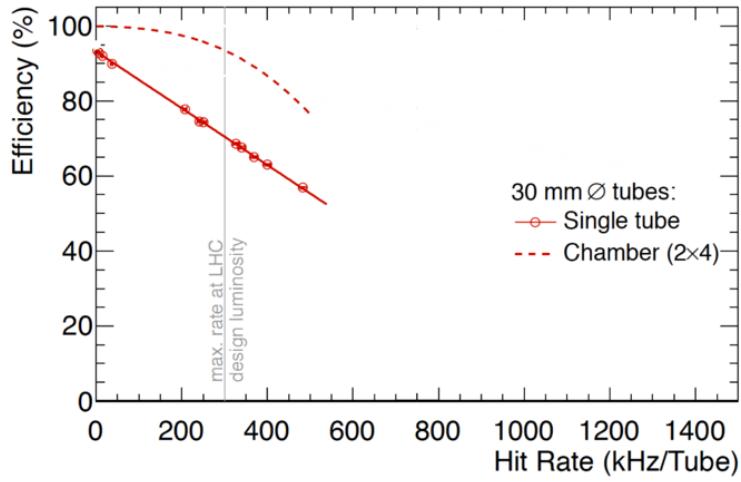


Figure 2.10: MDT tube hit (solid) and segment (dashed) efficiency as a function of hit rate per tube [12]

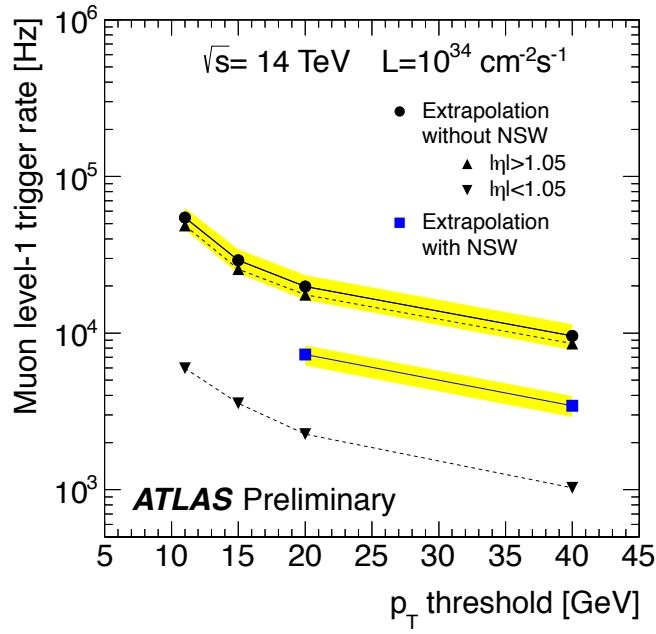


Figure 2.11: Trigger rate as a function of p_T threshold with and without the NSW upgrade [12]

¹⁰¹⁹ because of its good spatial resolution, while the sTGCs have better time resolution and are more suited
¹⁰²⁰ for the trigger. To maintain a fully redundant system, both technologies are used for both purposes.

1021 **MICROMEGAS**

1022 Micromegas detectors operate using a thin metallic mesh that sits approximately $100 \mu\text{m}$ away from
1023 the readout electrodes to create the amplification region. Above this mesh, there is a drift region on the
1024 order of a few mm in length capped by a drift electrode. As a charged particle traverses the detector, it
1025 ionizes gas and the electrons drift down towards readout strips. The timing of the drift can be used to
1026 reconstruct the angle of traversal of the particle. This is illustrated in figure 2.12. The micromegas used in
1027 ATLAS will be resistive micromegas, where the readout electrodes are topped with resistive strips [63].
1028 This alleviates the risk of sparking in the large area detectors that ATLAS will use.

1029 In ATLAS, the micromegas drift gap will be 5 mm and the amplification gap will be $128 \mu\text{m}$. They
1030 are filled with the same gas mixture as the MDTs. They will be stacked in an octuplet in an XXUV-
1031 UVXX geometry, where X refers to straight strips and U and V refer to stero strips at an angle of $\pm 1.5^\circ$.
1032 This arrangement allows for measurement of the azimuthal coordinate and gives a large lever arm be-
1033 tween the straight strips for triggering purposes. Figure 2.12 shows the geometry of a single micromegas
1034 detector as well as its operating principle [12].

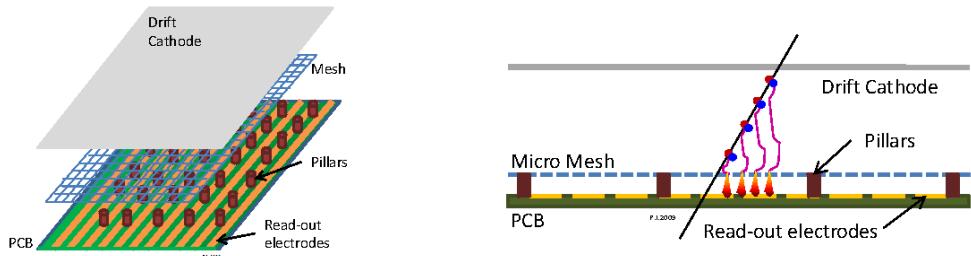


Figure 2.12: Illustrations of the geometry (left) and operating principle (right) of the micromegas detector [12]

1035 **sTGCs**

1036 The sTGCs are similar to the TGCs already described. They consist of gold-plated tungsten wires with
1037 a 1.8 mm pitch between two cathode planes 1.4 mm away from the wire plane. One cathode plane
1038 consists of strips with a 3.2 mm pitch (much smaller pitch than the TGCs), while the other consists
1039 of coarser pads that are used for defining regions of interest in the sTGC trigger algorithm. Figure 2.13
1040 shows the basic detector geometry.

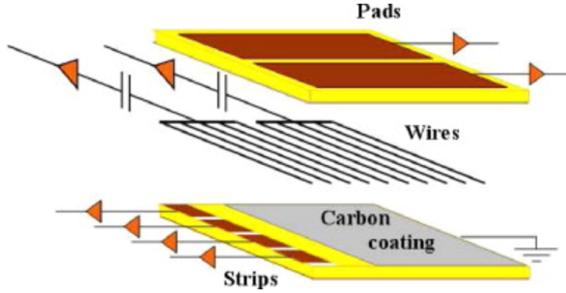


Figure 2.13: Geometry of the sTGC detector [12]

1041 2.3.3 PHYSICS IMPACT

1042 Maintaining low p_T thresholds for muons while still staying within the trigger rate budget at Level 1
 1043 (20 kHz) for the muon system is crucial for physics analyses to be successful in high luminosity condi-
 1044 tions. One realm where the lepton trigger threshold is especially important is in Higgs physics. In the
 1045 $H \rightarrow WW^*$ analysis, one of the W bosons is off shell and tends to decay to soft leptons. In associated
 1046 production of a Higgs with a W , the lepton is also important because the lepton provides the main han-
 1047 dle which allows the event to be triggered. Table 2.3 shows the impact of increasing the trigger thresholds
 1048 on these analyses. It shows that either raising the threshold or using only the barrel both have signifi-
 1049 cant impacts on the signal efficiency. With the NSW, the signal efficiency is largely maintained and the
 1050 triggers can be unprescaled.

Threshold	$H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ (%)	$H \rightarrow WW^*$ (%)
$p_T > 20$ GeV	93	94
$p_T > 40$ GeV	61	75
$p_T > 20$ GeV (barrel only)	43	72
$p_T > 20$ GeV (with NSW)	90	92

Table 2.3: Signal efficiencies for WH production with $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ and $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \mu\nu qq$ under different trigger configurations [12].

1051 2.4 OBJECT RECONSTRUCTION IN ATLAS

1052 ATLAS analyses first start by requiring the presence of certain reconstructed physics objects in the event.
 1053 This section will present a brief overview of the algorithms used to reconstruct electrons, muons, jets

1054 (including b -jets), and missing energy^{*}. The performance of object reconstruction and measurement will
 1055 also be discussed as these are relevant to the analyses presented later. Figure 2.14 gives an overview of the
 1056 different sub-detectors that each type of particle will interact with in ATLAS.

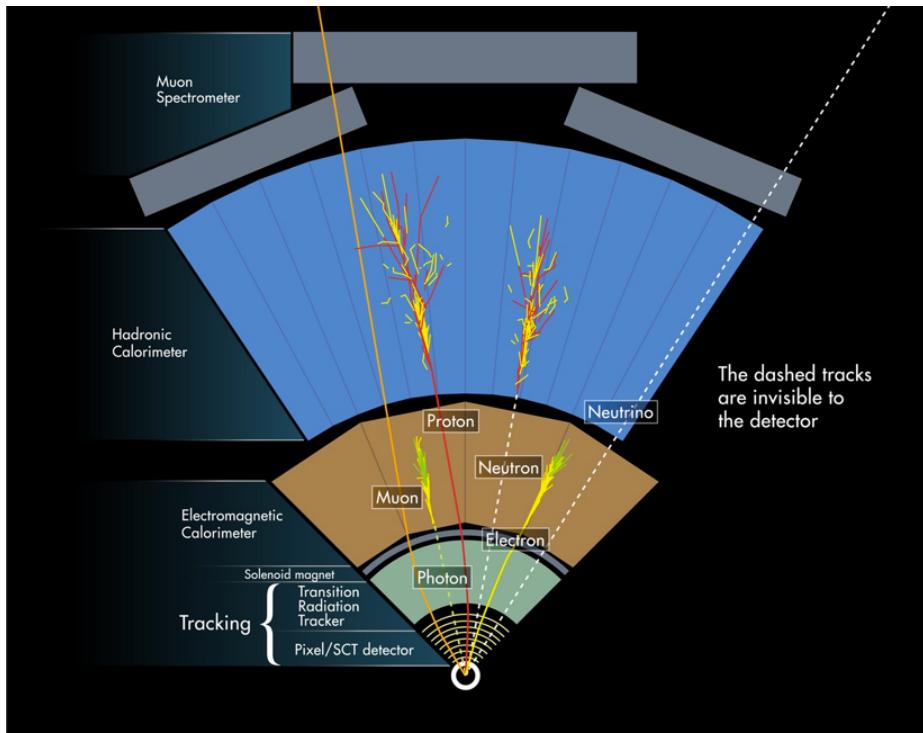


Figure 2.14: Illustration of particle interactions in ATLAS [13]

1057 2.4.I ELECTRONS

1058 Electrons in ATLAS will leave tracks in the inner detector and energy deposits in the electromagnetic
 1059 calorimeter. The algorithm for recognizing the signature of electrons proceeds in two steps: reconstruc-
 1060 tion and identification.

1061 In reconstruction, an electron candidate is formed by matching EM calorimeter deposits with ID
 1062 tracks. The algorithm first chooses seed clusters in the EM calorimeter by using a sliding window algo-
 1063 rithm that searches for towers with transverse energy larger than 2.5 GeV. In addition to seed clusters,
 1064 track candidates must be identified in the ID. The algorithm selects seed tracks with $p_T > 1$ GeV that

*Reconstruction algorithms for other objects, such as photons and τ leptons, are not detailed here as these objects are not used in the presented studies.

1065 do not fit well with a pion hypothesis. Once candidate tracks are selected, they are re-fit with a Gaussian Sum Filter (GSF) algorithm to estimate electron parameters [64]. Finally, an electron candidate is
 1066 formed if at least one track matches to a seed cluster in the calorimeter. The full details of the reconstruction
 1067 algorithm can be found in reference [14].

1069 Once an electron candidate is present, identification criteria must be applied in order to reject fake
 1070 electrons from background. Many different variables are used for this identification, most of them re-
 1071 lated to the shower shape in the EM calorimeter and the amount of leakage into the hadronic calorime-
 1072 ter, as well as information from the ID and in particular the TRT. There are both cut-based and likelihood-
 1073 based criteria that range from “loose” to “very tight”. For details, see reference [14].

1074 Figure 2.15 shows the algorithm’s reconstruction efficiency of true electrons for different identification
 1075 criteria as well as the electron energy resolution in simulation [14, 15]. The reconstruction efficiency is
 1076 measured using both Z and J/ψ tag and probe techniques.

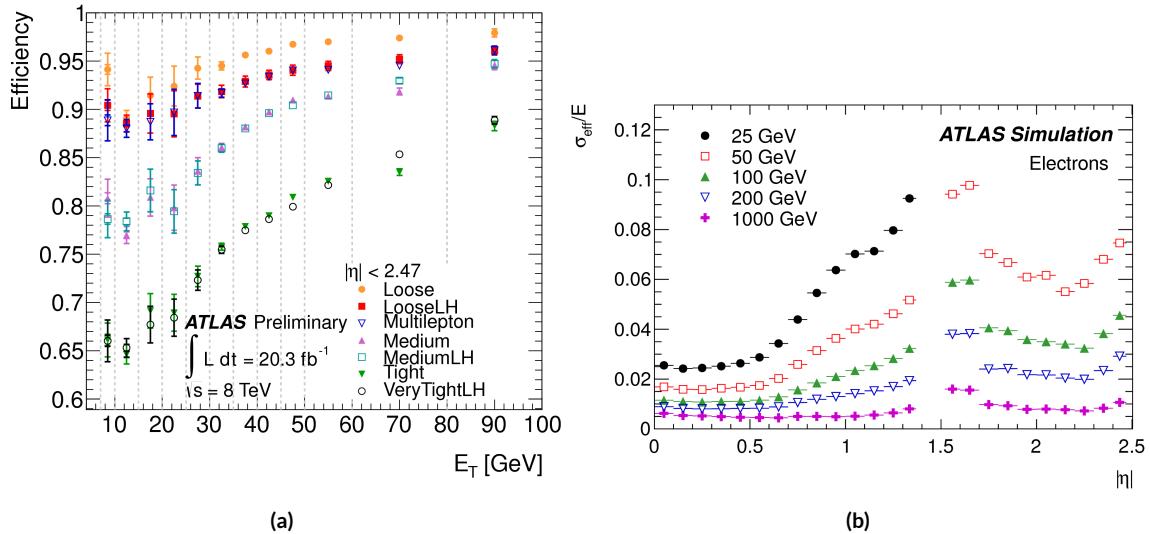


Figure 2.15: Electron performance: (a) reconstruction efficiency as a function of electron E_T [14] (b) energy resolution in simulation as a function of $|\eta|$ for different energy electrons [15]

1077 2.4.2 MUONS

1078 The ATLAS detector is designed to stop most particles before they reach the muon spectrometer. Muons,
 1079 however, are minimum ionizing particles, meaning that they will not lose a significant amount of energy

1080 through interactions with the detector and will thus pass through. Therefore, the muon reconstruction
1081 works to match tracks in the muon spectrometer with tracks in the inner detector.

1082 The first step of reconstruction is to reconstruct local straight line tracks, called segments, in each
1083 muon chamber. Segments are then fit to larger tracks that traverse the entire muon spectrometer. Such
1084 muon tracks are referred to as “standalone” tracks (SA) as they only use information from the muon
1085 spectrometer. The standalone tracks are then matched to tracks in the inner detector to form “com-
1086 bined” (CB) muons, where the combined ID and MS fit are used to determine the momentum and di-
1087 rection of the muon. To improve acceptance, segment-tagged and calorimeter-tagged muons are also
1088 reconstructed. In these cases, ID tracks are matched to segments in the MS and calorimeter deposits con-
1089 sistent with a minimum ionizing particle, respectively. The details of the reconstruction can be found in
1090 reference [16].

1091 As with electrons, once muon candidates are reconstructed they have identification criteria applied to
1092 reduce background. These criteria include the χ^2 match between the ID and MS tracks, the number of
1093 hits in the ID, overall ID and MS track fit quality, and additional variables [16]. The criteria range from
1094 “loose” to “tight” as with electrons.

1095 Figure 2.16 shows the muon reconstruction efficiency (measured with Z and J/ψ tag and probe) and
1096 invariant mass resolution [16].

1097 2.4.3 JETS

1098 When a quark or gluon is produced in collisions, it is not measured directly in ATLAS. Rather, due to
1099 QCD effects, it produces a collimated spray of hadrons in the direction of the original parton, which is
1100 known as a jet. Jets are reconstructed in ATLAS using energy deposits in the hadronic calorimeter. The
1101 first step is build “topological clusters” out of energy deposits in calorimeter cells [65, 66]. This is done
1102 using strategy where seed cells are chosen by picking cells whose energy measurements are four times the
1103 amount of noise expected for that cell. Adjacent cells with at least 2σ energy measurements are added
1104 to the cluster, then a final layer of clusters with energy above 0σ are added. Once calorimeter clusters
1105 are formed, they are clustered further into jet candidates using the anti- k_T jet clustering algorithm [67].

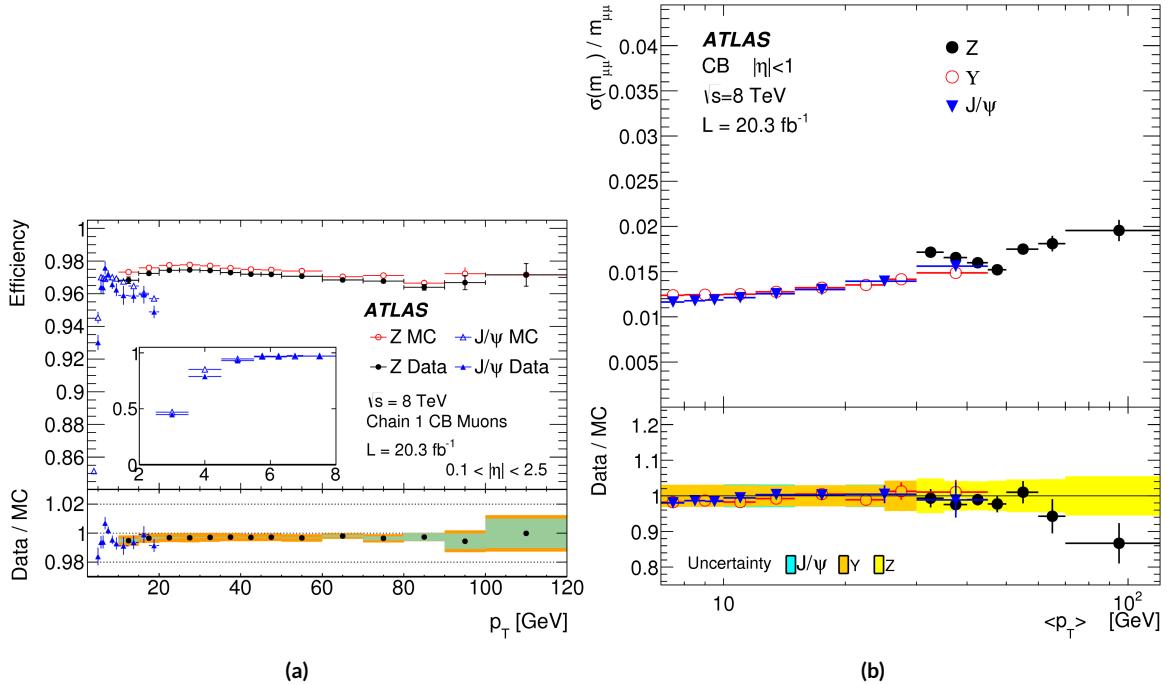


Figure 2.16: Muon performance: (a) reconstruction efficiency as a function of muon p_T (b) dimuon mass resolution as a function of average p_T [16]

This algorithm uses a parameter R that appears in the denominator of the clustering distance metric and defines the radial size of the jet in η - ϕ space.

The energy response of the calorimeter must be properly characterized in order to reconstruct jet energy. Calorimeter clusters can be calibrated either with the EM calibration, where each cluster is assumed to have come from the energy deposit of an electron or photon, or the LCW calibration, where local cluster weights are computed to allow for local calibration of clusters as hadronic or electromagnetic.

The details of the jet energy calibration are not detailed here and are discussed in reference [17].

Figure 2.17 shows the jet energy response after calibration in Monte Carlo as a function of the true p_T of the jet [17].

2.4.4 b -TAGGING

One important aspect of jet physics is the task of identifying the flavor of parton that produced the measured jet. While in general this is very difficult, jets from b -quarks offer an interesting case where such identification is possible. B mesons have a lifetime on the order of 10^{-12} seconds, which makes a $c\tau$

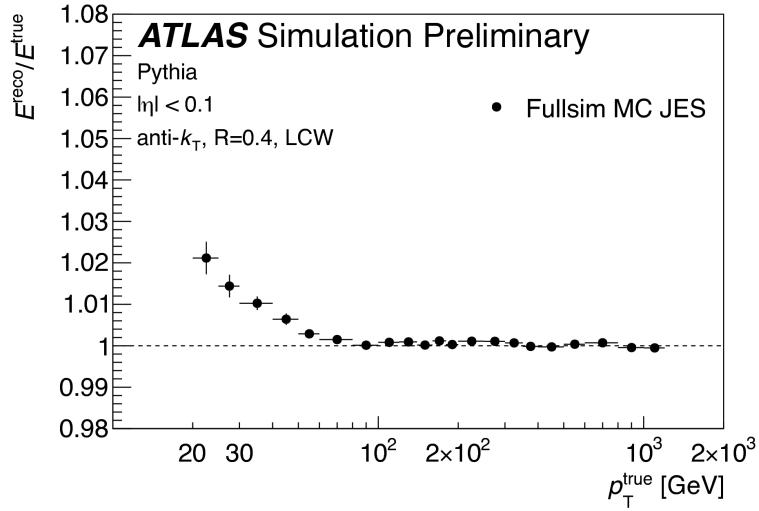


Figure 2.17: Jet energy response after calibration as a function of true p_T in simulation [17]

on the order of millimeters [1]. This type of displaced decay vertex can be identified in detectors like ATLAS and allows b -jets to be distinguished from other flavors of jets[†].

ATLAS uses a multivariate machine learning algorithm to identify jets from b -quarks. The inputs to this algorithm are determined from lower level reconstruction algorithms. There are three distinct algorithms that reconstruct variables which are used as input to the multivariate technique.

The first family is referred to as IPxD (where the x can either be 2 or 3). These algorithms use the transverse and longitudinal impact parameters d_0 and z_0 of the tracks inside a jet to determine their consistency with the primary vertex. They two or three dimensional (hence the x) templates for light flavor, charm, and bottom jets and then evaluate the likelihood of the jet coming from each of these types. The likelihood ratios are used as inputs to the multivariate algorithm.

The next two algorithms used as input are referred to as the secondary vertex (SV) and JetFitter (JF) algorithms. The SV algorithm uses tracks inside the jet to fit for vertices that are displaced from the primary vertex. The JF algorithm attempts to reconstruct the full flight path of the b by looking for multiple displaced vertices along the same line (as B decays often result in subsequent c decays).

In Run 1, the multivariate b -tagging algorithm used a neural network and was referred to as MV1.

[†]Jets from charm quarks can also be detected in this way but they do not live quite as long so the displacement of the vertex is harder to distinguish

1134 The details of this algorithm and its inputs are given in reference [18]. In Run 2, the number of inputs
 1135 was simplified and a boosted decision tree with 24 input variables was used, referred to as MV2. The
 1136 details of this algorithm are in reference [19]. Figure 2.18 shows the performance of each of these algo-
 1137 rithms.

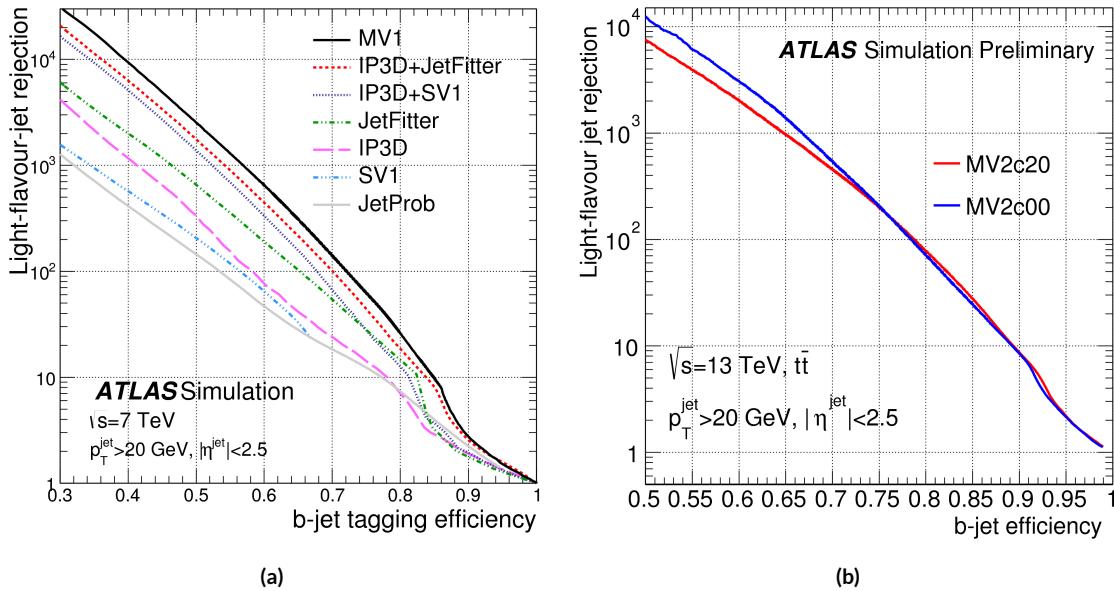


Figure 2.18: Light jet rejection ($1/\text{efficiency}$) vs. b -jet efficiency for MV1 and its input algorithms (a) [18] and MV2 (b) [19] in simulated $t\bar{t}$ events. The numbers in the algorithm names in (b) refer to the fraction of charm events used in the MV2 training.

1138 2.4.5 MISSING TRANSVERSE ENERGY

1139 As noted in figure 2.14, neutrinos produced in ATLAS will pass through the detector without inter-
 1140 acting. The only way of detecting the presence of particles like neutrinos (or BSM particles that are
 1141 long-lived) is to use missing transverse momentum. The basic principle of missing transverse energy is
 1142 to use the momentum balance of the incoming protons to infer the presence of missing particles. The
 1143 net longitudinal momentum of the incoming partons that collide is not known (since each carries an un-
 1144 known fraction of the proton's momentum). However, the protons (and thus incoming partons) have
 1145 no net momentum in the plane transverse to the beam line (the x - y plane). Therefore, if there are no
 1146 un-measured particles in the final state, the transverse momenta of all of the final state particles should

balance. The magnitude of this imbalance is known as missing transverse momentum (E_T^{miss}).

The basic calculation of missing transverse momentum from calorimeter cells is given in equation 2.4 [68].

$$\begin{aligned} E_x^{\text{miss}} &= -\sum_{i=1}^{N_{\text{cell}}} E_i \sin \theta_i \cos \phi_i \\ E_y^{\text{miss}} &= -\sum_{i=1}^{N_{\text{cell}}} E_i \sin \theta_i \sin \phi_i \end{aligned} \quad (2.4)$$

The E_T^{miss} calculation is separated into different terms based on the objects that the calorimeter clusters are associated with. This way, each cell's contribution is calibrated appropriately according to the object. This separation of terms is shown in equation 2.5 [68].

$$\begin{aligned} E_{x(y)}^{\text{miss,calo}} &= E_{x(y)}^{\text{miss},e} + E_{x(y)}^{\text{miss},\gamma} + E_{x(y)}^{\text{miss},\tau} + E_{x(y)}^{\text{miss,jets}} \\ &\quad + E_{x(y)}^{\text{miss,softjets}} + E_{x(y)}^{\text{miss},\mu} + E_{x(y)}^{\text{miss,CellOut}} \end{aligned} \quad (2.5)$$

The CellOut term of the above equation corresponds to calorimeter cells with energy deposits that are not associated with other objects. The soft jets term comes from cells associated to jets with p_T between 7 and 20 GeV, while the jets term comes from jets with $p_T > 20$ GeV. Because muons do not deposit significant energy in the calorimeter, the muon momentum is used for the muon term [68]. The final E_T^{miss} is calculated using equation 2.6.

$$E_T^{\text{miss}} = \sqrt{(E_x^{\text{miss}})^2 + (E_y^{\text{miss}})^2} \quad (2.6)$$

Figure 2.19 shows the resolution of the components of the E_T^{miss} under different pileup suppression techniques [20].

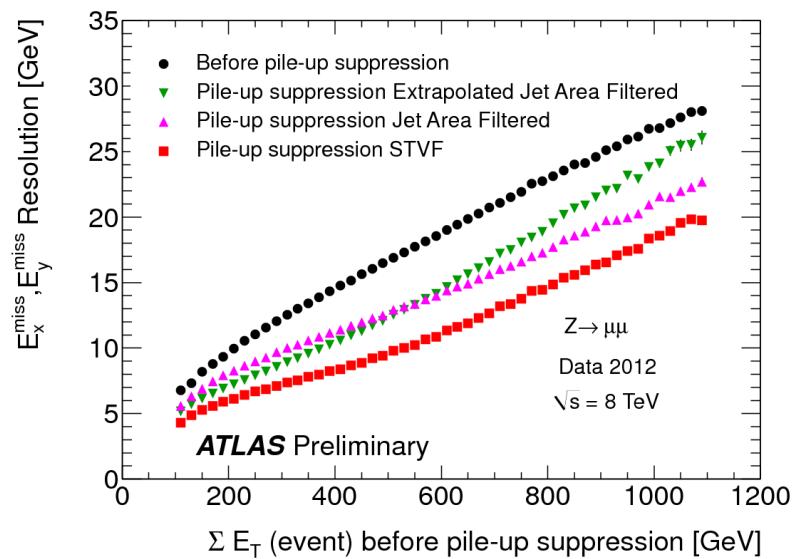


Figure 2.19: Resolution of E_T^{miss} components as a function of $\sum E_T$ before pileup suppression with different pileup techniques [20]

1159

Part II

1160

Observation and measurement of Higgs

1161

boson decays to WW^* in LHC Run I at

1162

$$\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ and } 8 \text{ TeV}$$

*Basic research is what I am doing when I don't know
what I am doing.*

Wernher von Braun

3

1163

1164

$H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ Analysis Strategy

1165 3.1 INTRODUCTION

1166 This chapter presents an overview of the strategy for searching for a Higgs boson in the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow$
1167 $\ell\nu\ell\nu$ decay topology. Its purpose is to define in broad terms how the search and measurement are un-
1168 dertaken, before going into details on the specific sub-categories within the larger analysis. First, the
1169 properties of the Higgs signal are discussed and the associated backgrounds are presented. Next, the ob-
1170 servables used to enhance the signal to background ratio are defined. Finally, the parameters of interest
1171 in the search and measurement will be shown, along with a brief overview of the statistical treatment of
1172 the final Higgs candidates.

1173 Following this chapter, the results of three different studies within the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ channel
1174 are shown. Chapter 4 presents a search for Higgs boson production in gluon fusion mode and the role
1175 of the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ channel in its discovery. Chapter 5 shows the search and first observation in ATLAS
1176 of the Vector Boson Fusion (VBF) production mode of the Higgs in the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ decay channel.

1177 Finally, chapter 6 shows the combined Run 1 $H \rightarrow WW^*$ results for the measurement of the Higgs
1178 cross section and relative coupling strengths to other SM particles.

1179 3.2 THE $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ SIGNAL IN ATLAS

1180 The signal studied in this and subsequent chapters is the Higgs boson in the WW^* final state, where
1181 each W boson subsequently decays into a charged lepton and a neutrino. In its simplest decay path, the
1182 final state consists of two neutrinos and two charged leptons, each of which can be either an electron or
1183 a muon. If one or both of the W s decay to τ leptons, only leptonic decays of the τ are considered. This
1184 decay path produces additional neutrinos in the final state but still gives two charged leptons as before.
1185 Neutrinos are not detected in ATLAS, so the final state ultimately consists of two reconstructed leptons
1186 and missing transverse momentum (denoted as E_T^{miss}). Final states where both of the charged leptons
1187 are electrons or muons are referred to as the “same flavor” ($ee/\mu\mu$) final states, while those with one
1188 electron and one muon are referred to as “different flavor” ($e\mu$ or μe).

1189 While the basic final state consists of two leptons and E_T^{miss} , there can be additional objects depend-
1190 ing on the production mode of the Higgs. As described in detail in Chapter 1, if the Higgs is produced
1191 via vector boson fusion production, there will be two additional forward jets in the event. Even in gluon
1192 fusion, one or more jets can be produced through initial state radiation from the incoming gluons. Be-
1193 cause of the varying background composition as a function of jet multiplicity, each bin in this variable
1194 has its own dedicated requirements applied in the search and measurement. The $n_j = 0$ and $n_j = 1$
1195 bins are dedicated to gluon fusion production, while the $n_j \geq 2$ bin has separate dedicated searches for
1196 ggF and VBF production.

1197 Figure 3.1 shows the relative branching fractions for the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ process, calculated from the
1198 Particle Data Group values for the W and τ branching ratios[?]. The largest branching ratio is both
1199 W bosons decaying to quark pairs at 45.44%. The next largest is one W decaying leptonically and the
1200 other decaying to quarks, a branching ratio of 34.18%. In all cases, ℓ denotes either an electron or muon,
1201 and the leptonic branching ratios of the τ are included. For example, the $\ell\nu qq$ final state includes one W
1202 decaying to $e\nu$, $\mu\nu$, or $\tau\nu$. In the case of the $W \rightarrow \tau\nu$ decay, the τ lepton then decays to an electron or

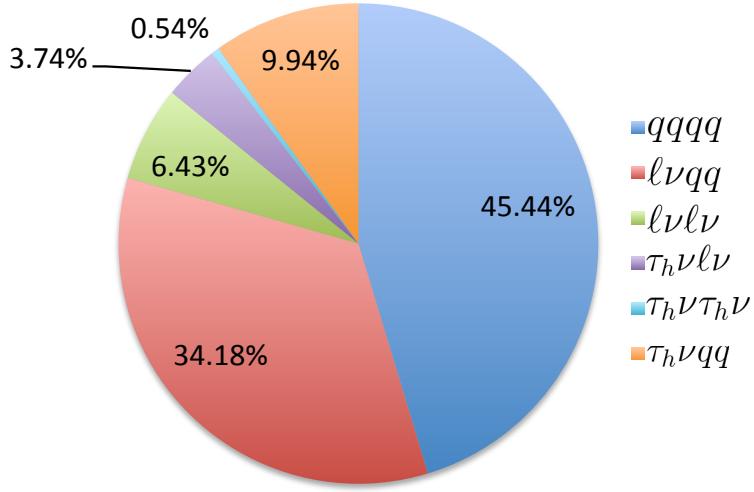


Figure 3.1: Branching ratios for a WW system. q refers to quarks. ℓ can be either an electron or muon, and the leptonic branching ratios of the τ are included. For example, the $\ell\nu qq$ final state includes one W decaying to $e\nu$, $\mu\nu$, or $\tau\nu$. τ_h refer to hadronic decays of the τ .

1203 muon via $\tau \rightarrow \nu_\tau \ell \nu_\ell$. Final states with a τ_h refer to hadronic decays of the τ . The branching ratio to the
 1204 $\ell\nu\ell\nu$ final state is 6.43%.

1205 While the $\ell\nu\ell\nu$ final state is not a large fraction of the branching ratio, there are significant advantages
 1206 in this channel. First, both the $qqqq$ and $\ell\nu qq$ channels suffer from a large QCD multijet background,
 1207 which is often difficult to model. Second, events in the the $\ell\nu\ell\nu$ channel in data can be triggered more
 1208 efficiently due to the presence of two leptons.

1209 3.3 BACKGROUND PROCESSES

1210 Many processes from the Standard Model can also produce a final state with two leptons and missing
 1211 transverse momentum . This section lists the dominant backgrounds to Higgs production. It gives gen-
 1212 eral descriptions of how the backgrounds mimic Higgs production and how they can be reduced. Ta-
 1213 ble3.1 summarizes the different processes.

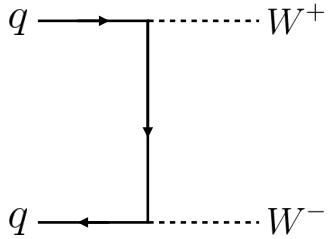


Figure 3.2: Feynman diagram for Standard Model WW production

1214 3.3.1 STANDARD MODEL WW PRODUCTION

1215 Non-resonant Standard Model diboson production, as shown in figure 3.2, is an irreducible background
 1216 to Higgs boson production in the WW final state. It produces the same exact final state objects, namely
 1217 leptonically decaying W bosons. There are no additional objects in the final state that allow for back-
 1218 ground reduction. Therefore the analysis solely relies on the correlations between the leptons to reduce
 1219 this background.

1220 3.3.2 TOP QUARK PRODUCTION

1221 Production of top quarks, either in pairs ($t\bar{t}$ production) or singly (e.g. Wt production), can also mimic
 1222 Higgs production. Because top quarks decay via $t \rightarrow Wb$, top pair production can produce a final state
 1223 with two W bosons that then decay leptonically. In this case, however, there are two additional jets from
 1224 the bottom quarks in the final state. This allows the analysis to veto on the presence of jets identified as
 1225 originating from a b in order to reduce the size of the background.

1226 Single top production can occur via s -channel, t -channel, or associated production (Wt). The mode
 1227 which most closely resembles the Higgs final state is Wt . In this case, there are two real W bosons pro-
 1228 duced, as with $t\bar{t}$. However, the decay of the single top quark will still also produce one b -jet, meaning a
 1229 b veto will reduce this background as well.

1230 Figure 3.3 shows the Feynman diagrams for $t\bar{t}$ and Wt production.

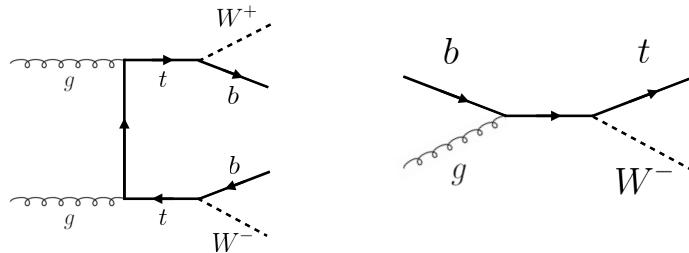


Figure 3.3: Feynman diagrams for top pair production (left) and Wt production (right)

1231 3.3.3 W +JETS BACKGROUND

1232 Single W boson production, in association with jets, is a unique background. The other background
 1233 considered so far have all included real leptons in the final state. In this case, however, only one real lep-
 1234 ton from the decay of a W exists in the final state. The second reconstructed lepton can arise from two
 1235 different cases. First, the lepton may truly be an algorithm “fake”, or a jet misidentified as a lepton by
 1236 either the electron or muon reconstruction algorithms. Second, the lepton may be a real lepton but
 1237 coming from semi-leptonic decays of particles inside the shower of the jet. This background can be re-
 1238duced by requiring that the reconstructed lepton have little activity surrounding it in the calorimeter
 1239 (also known as an “isolated” lepton). Figure 3.4 shows the Feynman diagram for W +jets production.

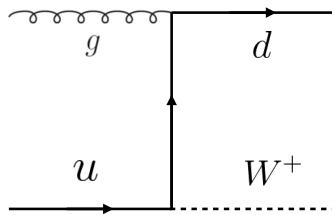


Figure 3.4: An example Feynman diagram of W +jets production

1240 3.3.4 Z/γ^* +JETS BACKGROUND

1241 Production of a Z/γ^* in association with jets (also known as Drell-Yan) is also a background to Higgs
 1242 production. In particular, the same flavor final states have a large Z +jets background, as the Z decays
 1243 into two leptons of the same flavor. (This background also enters the different flavor final state through

¹²⁴⁴ the leptonic decays of $Z \rightarrow \tau\tau$). Figure 3.5 shows the production of a Z in association with one jet. Be-
¹²⁴⁵ cause there are no neutrinos in this final state, variables like E_T^{miss} can be used to reduce the background.

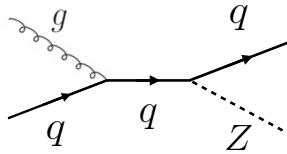


Figure 3.5: An example Feynman diagram of $Z + \text{jets}$ production

¹²⁴⁶ 3.3.5 OTHER (SUBDOMINANT) BACKGROUNDS

¹²⁴⁷ There are additional processes which contribute to the background composition but are not produced
¹²⁴⁸ as frequently as those listed already. The first of these are referred to as VV or “Other diboson” pro-
¹²⁴⁹ cesses and include multiple Standard Model diboson processes, including WZ , ZZ , $W\gamma$, $W\gamma^*$, and
¹²⁵⁰ $Z\gamma$ production. Additionally, there is background from QCD multijet production, where two jets are
¹²⁵¹ misidentified as leptons.

Category	Process	Description
SM WW	$WW \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$	Real leptons and neutrinos
Top quark production	$t\bar{t} \rightarrow WbWb \rightarrow \ell\nu b\ell\nu b$ $tW \rightarrow WbW \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu b$ $t\bar{b}, t\bar{q}\bar{b}$	Real leptons, untagged b s Real leptons, untagged b Untagged b , jet misidentified as lepton
Drell-Yan	$Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow ee, \mu\mu$ $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$	“Fake” E_T^{miss} Real leptons and neutrinos
Other dibosons	$ZZ \rightarrow \ell\ell\nu\nu$ $W\gamma^*, WZ \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\ell, ZZ \rightarrow \ell\ell\ell\ell$ $W\gamma, Z\gamma$	Real leptons and neutrinos Unreconstructed leptons γ reconstructed as e , unreconstructed lepton
$W + \text{jets}$	$Wj \rightarrow \ell\nu j$	Jet reconstructed as lepton
QCD multijet	jj	Jets reconstructed as leptons

Table 3.1: A summary of backgrounds to the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ signal

1252 3.4 SHARED SIGNAL REGION SELECTION REQUIREMENTS

1253 As presented in section 3.2, there are many different combinations of objects that can define a $H \rightarrow$
 1254 $WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ final state. The multiplicity of jets and the flavor combinations of the leptons both lead
 1255 to many potential signal regions. Additionally, signal regions can be optimized separately to be sensi-
 1256 tive to the distinct production modes of the Higgs. Gluon fusion, vector boson fusion, and associated
 1257 production of a Higgs all lead to unique final state topologies. Figure 3.6 delineates the different signal
 1258 regions used in the gluon fusion and vector boson fusion $H \rightarrow WW^*$ analyses. While there are different
 1259 optimizations possible in each signal region, there are also some commonly shared selections that will be
 1260 described here.

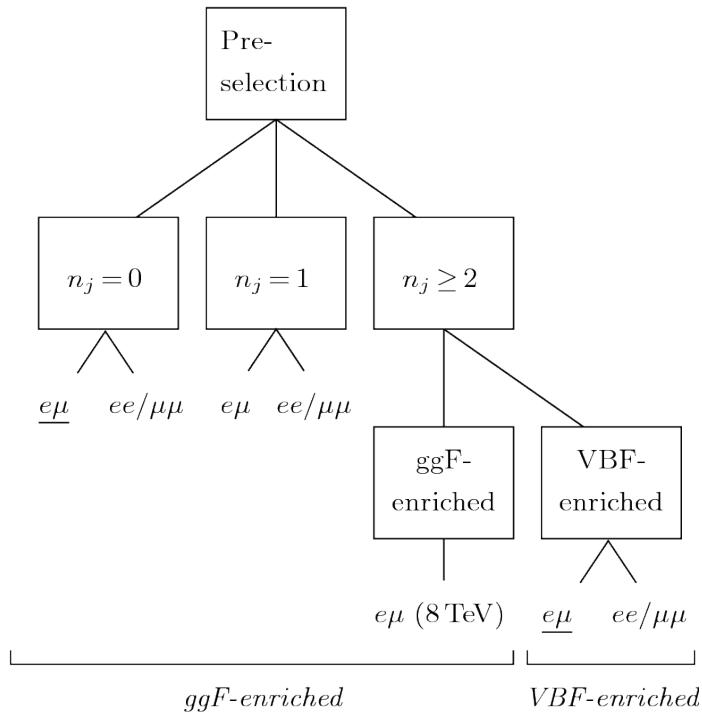


Figure 3.6: An illustration of the unique analysis signal regions[21]

1261 3.4.1 EVENT PRE-SELECTION

1262 Before being sorted into the distinct signal regions, basic requirements are applied on the reconstructed
 1263 objects in the event to select Higgs-like event candidates. First, two oppositely charged leptons are re-

1264 quired.

1265 Once the leptons are selected, the last requirement for event pre-selection is the presence of neutrinos.
1266 As neutrinos cannot be detected directly in ATLAS, E_T^{miss} can be used as a proxy for the combined neu-
1267 trino momentum in the transverse plane. In general, it is expected that the signal should have a harder
1268 E_T^{miss} spectrum than backgrounds, especially if those backgrounds did not contain neutrinos. One ad-
1269 ditional consideration when using E_T^{miss} is the fact that mis-measurements of objects in the detector
1270 can lead to imbalances in the transverse plane that are not due to real particles escaping the detector.
1271 One indicator that this is the case is that the E_T^{miss} vector in the transverse plane will be pointing in the
1272 same direction as the mis-measured object. Therefore, a new variable, $E_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss}}$, is used in the pre-selection.
1273 $E_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss}}$ is defined in equation 3.1.

$$E_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss}} = \begin{cases} E_T^{\text{miss}} \sin \Delta\phi_{\text{near}} & \text{if } \Delta\phi_{\text{near}} < \pi/2 \\ E_T^{\text{miss}} & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (3.1)$$

1274 If the closest object to the E_T^{miss} vector is within $\pi/2$ radians in the transverse plane, the E_T^{miss} is pro-
1275 jected away from this object. Otherwise, the normal E_T^{miss} vector is used. Figure 3.7 shows a graphical
1276 illustration of this concept.

1277 Once both the lepton and E_T^{miss} pre-selections are made, the analysis can be divided into different
1278 regions according to jet multiplicity.

1279 3.4.2 JET MULTIPLICITY

1280 Jet multiplicity, denoted as n_j , is used to sub-divide the analysis into its distinct signal regions. The rea-
1281 son for this is twofold. First, different jet multiplicity bins will be more or less sensitive to different Higgs
1282 production modes. For example, the $n_j \geq 2$ region is more sensitive to VBF production because of
1283 the two high momentum jets produced at matrix element level. For gluon fusion production to enter
1284 this bin, two initial state radiation jets must be emitted. Second, background composition varies greatly
1285 in different bins of n_j . Figure 3.8 shows the jet multiplicity in both the different flavor and same flavor
1286 regions. It also shows the background composition in the bins of n_b . There are a few clear trends from

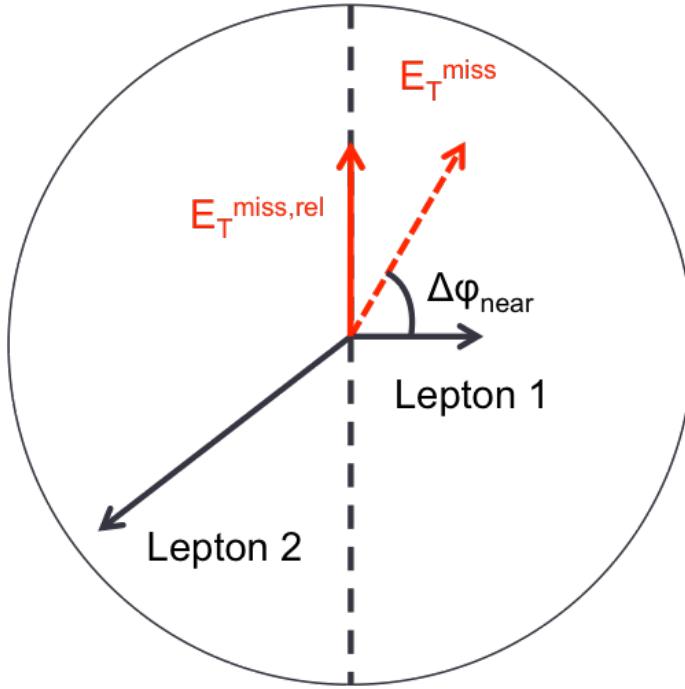


Figure 3.7: A graphical illustration of the $E_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss}}$ calculation

1287 this distribution. The first is that the Drell-Yan background dominates in the same flavor channels for
 1288 $n_j \leq 1$. Second, the top background becomes a clear contributor to the total background for $n_j \geq 1$.
 1289 Lastly, the SM WW production dominates in the $n_j = 0$ bin, as it is an irreducible background to
 1290 $H \rightarrow WW^*$ production. Because of these distinct features, each jet multiplicity bin is treated separately.

1291 3.5 BACKGROUND REDUCTION IN SAME-FLAVOR FINAL STATES

1292 As described in section 3.4.2, the background composition of the same flavor final states is unique to that
 1293 of the different flavor states. In particular, Drell Yan processes play a much larger role because the Z/γ^*
 1294 decays to same flavor leptons. Because real neutrinos are absent in the Z/γ^* decays to ee and $\mu\mu$, a re-
 1295 quirement on E_T^{miss} should largely reduce the background. However, as this section will demonstrate,
 1296 with increasing pileup conditions the resolution of the calorimeter-based E_T^{miss} degrades greatly. There-
 1297 fore, two new variables for Z/γ^* background reduction are constructed and described in this section.

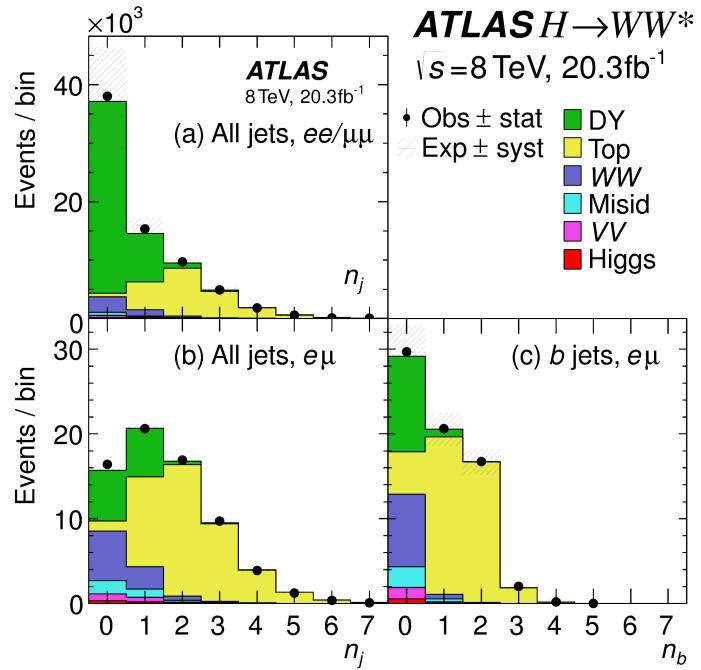


Figure 3.8: Predicted backgrounds (compared with data) as a function of n_j (a and b) and n_b (c)

1298 3.5.1 PILEUP AND E_T^{miss} RESOLUTION

1299 Secondary interactions of protons in the colliding bunches of the LHC (known as pileup interactions,
 1300 described in detail in Chapter 2) deposit energy into the ATLAS calorimeter on top of the energy that
 1301 comes from the hard scatter process that is being searched for or analyzed. The calculation of E_T^{miss} is
 1302 fundamentally Poissonian, as summing up all of the energy deposits in individual calorimeter cells or
 1303 clusters is similar to a counting experiment. Thus, the energy resolution scales as \sqrt{E} , just as the error on
 1304 a mean of N in a Poisson distribution is \sqrt{N} . As more energy is deposited in the calorimeter, the E_T^{miss}
 1305 resolution degrades, meaning that the E_T^{miss} resolution is particularly sensitive to LHC instantaneous
 1306 luminosity conditions.

1307 Figure 3.9 shows an event display of a $Z/\gamma^* + \text{jets}$ event candidate with the twenty-five reconstructed
 1308 primary vertices. This display illustrates that while the interaction of interest only has tracks coming
 1309 from the hardest primary vertex, all of the secondary interactions will deposit energy in the calorimeter as
 1310 well.

1311 Figure 3.10 shows the RMS of the E_T^{miss} distribution in $Z \rightarrow \mu\mu$ events (where there are no real neu-

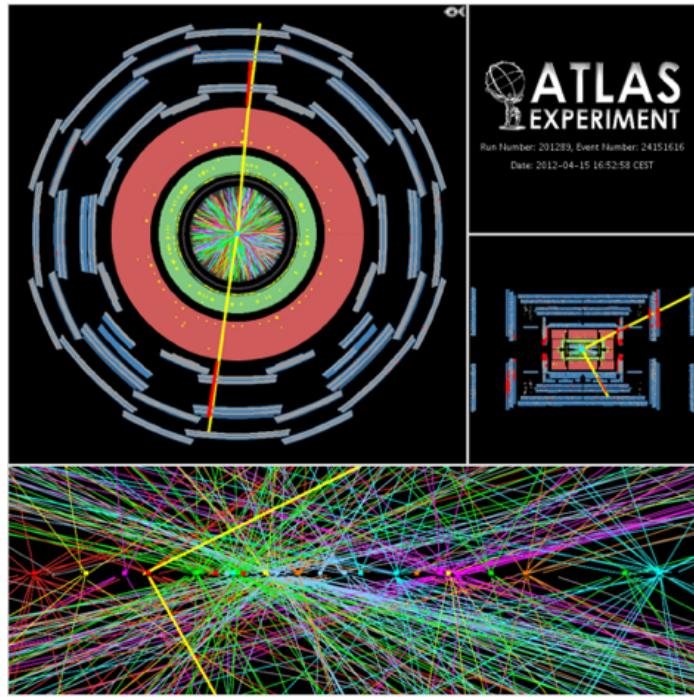


Figure 3.9: An event display of a Z/γ^* + jets event illustrating the effect of pileup interactions

trinos) as a function of the number of the average number of interactions. Under 2011 LHC conditions, this RMS was approximately 9 GeV, while under 2012 running conditions the resolution worsened to 12 GeV. This worsening dilutes the E_T^{miss} variable's ability to reduce the Z/γ^* background.

3.5.2 TRACK-BASED DEFINITIONS OF MISSING TRANSVERSE MOMENTUM

Because the increasing number of secondary proton-proton interactions degrades calorimeter-based E_T^{miss} resolution, a new variable using only contributions from the primary interaction vertex is necessary to further reduce the Z/γ^* background. While it is not possible to associate calorimeter energy deposits with a particular vertex, individual charged particle tracks in the Inner Detector are associated to unique vertices. Thus, two track-based definitions of missing transverse momentum , using only tracks coming from the primary vertex in the event, are used in the analysis. The simplest variable, $p_T^{\text{miss}(\text{trk})}$, is the vectorial sum of the p_T of all of the tracks from the primary vertex and the selected leptons (excluding the tracks associated with the selected leptons to avoid double counting). This is defined in equa-

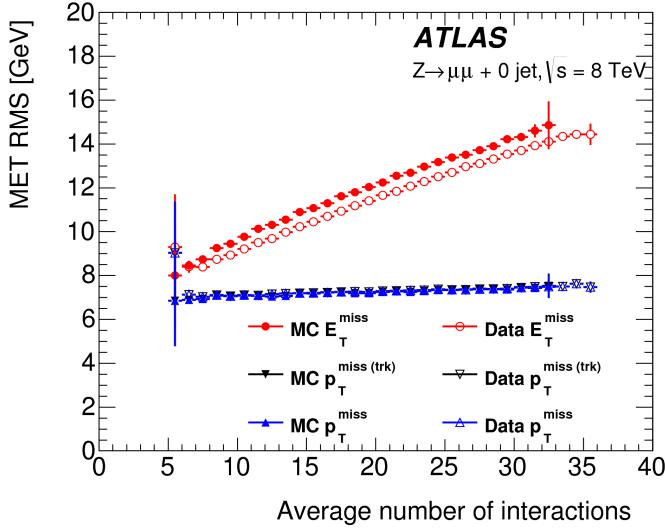


Figure 3.10: The RMS of different missing transverse momentum definitions as a function of the average number of interactions per bunch crossing

tion 3.2.

$$p_T^{\text{miss}(\text{trk})} = - \left(\sum_{\text{selected leptons}} p_T + \sum_{\text{other tracks}} p_T \right), \quad (3.2)$$

In events with hard jets, a better resolution on the missing transverse momentum is obtained by including the calorimeter based measurement of the hard jets rather than the track based measurements. Thus, another variable, p_T^{miss} , is defined, using the nominal measurements of p_T for the selected leptons and jets and using tracks rather than calorimeter clusters for the soft component of the missing transverse momentum. This is defined in equation 3.3.

$$p_T^{\text{miss}} = - \left(\sum_{\text{selected leptons}} p_T + \sum_{\text{selected jets}} p_T + \sum_{\text{other tracks}} p_T \right), \quad (3.3)$$

Figure 3.10 illustrates that these two new variables accomplish their intended purpose. The resolution as a function of mean number of interactions for both $p_T^{\text{miss}(\text{trk})}$ and p_T^{miss} is much flatter compared to the dependence for E_T^{miss} .

Figure 3.11a shows the difference between the true and reconstructed values of missing transverse mo-

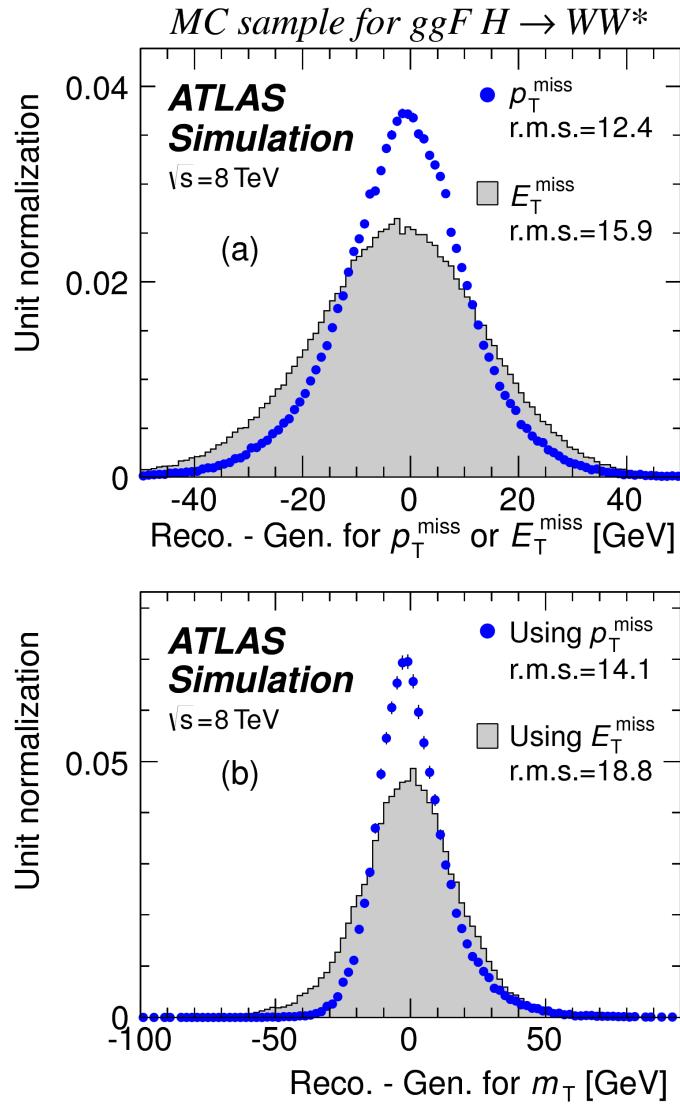


Figure 3.11: The difference between the true and reconstructed values of the missing transverse momentum (a) and m_T (b) in a gluon fusion signal sample

¹³³⁴ momentum using both the track-based p_T^{miss} and calorimeter based E_T^{miss} . The RMS of the distribution

¹³³⁵ improves by 3.5 GeV when using p_T^{miss} .

¹³³⁶ 3.5.3 DISTINGUISHING Z/γ^* +JETS AND $H \rightarrow WW^*$ TOPOLOGIES

¹³³⁷ The track-based definitions of missing transverse momentum were constructed to mitigate degrading

¹³³⁸ performance as a function of pileup. However, an additional variable can be constructed to exploit kine-

matic and topological differences between the Z/γ^* background and $H \rightarrow WW^*$ signal. Because there
 1339 are no real neutrinos in the final state (in the case of $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow ee, \mu\mu$ decays), the dilepton system of a
 1340 Z/γ^* will be balanced with the jets produced in the hard scatter. A new variable, f_{recoil} , is constructed
 1341 to estimate the balance between the dilepton system and the jets in the quadrant opposite the dilepton
 1342 vector in the transverse plane. It is defined in equation 3.4. The numerator of f_{recoil} is the magnitude of
 1343 the vectorial sum of the p_T of jets in the quadrant opposite the dilepton system, weighted by each jet's Jet
 1344 Vertex Fraction (JVF, described in chapter 2). The denominator is the magnitude of the dilepton p_T .
 1345

$$f_{\text{recoil}} = \left| \sum_{\text{jets } j \text{ in } \wedge} \text{JVF}_j \cdot \mathbf{p}_T^j \right| / p_T^{\ell\ell}. \quad (3.4)$$

1346 Figure 3.12 shows a shape comparison of the distribution of f_{recoil} in a simulated $Z/\gamma^* + \text{jets}$ sample,
 1347 a $H \rightarrow WW^*$ signal sample, and other backgrounds that contain real neutrinos. The $Z/\gamma^* + \text{jets}$ events
 1348 tend to be more balanced between the dilepton system and recoiling jets, while the processes containing
 1349 real neutrinos are less balanced in the transverse plane. Thus, a requirement on f_{recoil} will also reduce
 1350 the $Z/\gamma^* + \text{jets}$ background while maintaining a good signal efficiency.

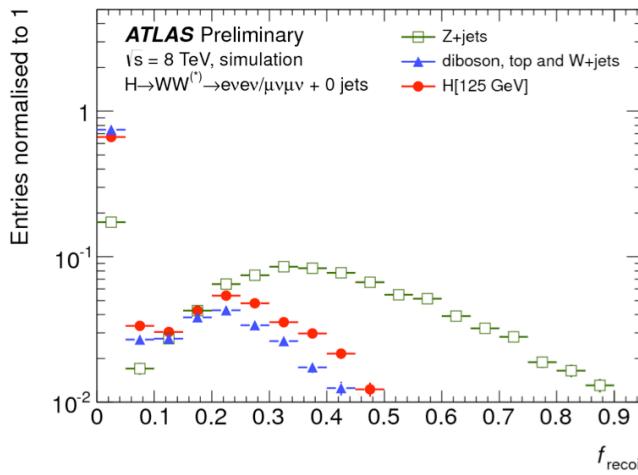


Figure 3.12: Comparison of f_{recoil} distributions for $Z/\gamma^* + \text{jets}$, $H \rightarrow WW^*$, and other backgrounds with real neutrinos.

1351 3.5.4 OPTIMIZING BACKGROUND REDUCTION SELECTION REQUIREMENTS

1352 The requirements on $p_T^{\text{miss(trk)}}$ and f_{recoil} used to reduce the Z+jets background must be optimized
 1353 to maximize their efficacy. Figure 3.13 shows an early attempt to optimize the combination of the two
 1354 requirements in the gluon fusion zero jet bin. Each bin shows the expected signal significance if the
 1355 $p_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss(trk)}}$ is required to be greater than the left edge of the bin and the f_{recoil} is required to be less than
 1356 the top edge of the bin. The figure shows that the best signal significance comes from requiring low val-
 1357 ues of $f_{\text{recoil}} (< 0.05)$ and $p_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss(trk)}}$ values greater than 45 GeV.

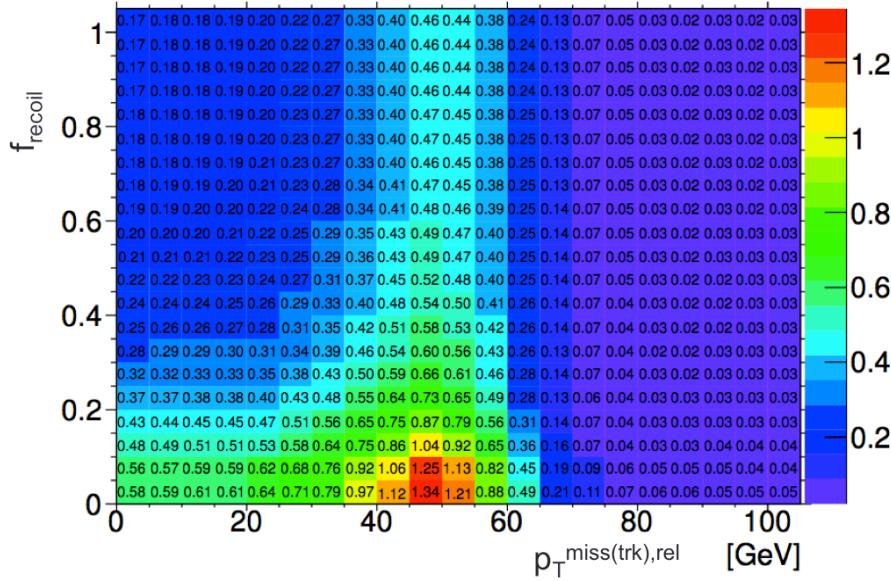


Figure 3.13: Signal significance as a function of required value for f_{recoil} and $p_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss(trk)}}$ in the ggF $H \rightarrow WW^*$ with $n_j = 0$

1358 3.6 PARAMETERS OF INTEREST AND STATISTICAL TREATMENT

1359 As with any search or measurement, there are particular parameters of the Higgs that the $H \rightarrow WW^*$
 1360 analysis is interested in measuring. In this case, the parameters of interest are the mass of the Higgs bo-
 1361 son and its production cross section. Because the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ process does not have a closed
 1362 final state, it is not possible to measure the full invariant mass of the particle that may have produced
 1363 the final state. However, a proxy for the invariant mass using transverse plane information can be de-

1364 fined. This is described in more detail in section 3.6.1. The second parameter of interest is the ratio of the
 1365 measured cross section to that expected from the Standard Model Higgs, which is denoted a μ . This is
 1366 defined in equation 3.5.

$$\mu = \frac{\sigma}{\sigma_{\text{SM}}} \quad (3.5)$$

1367 All of the likelihoods used in the statistical analysis of the final signal region events are paramaterized
 1368 as a function of μ . μ is a natural variable for hypothesis testing, as $\mu = 0$ corresponds to a background
 1369 only hypothesis and $\mu = 1$ corresponds exactly to a Standard Model Higgs.

1370 3.6.1 TRANSVERSE MASS

1371 Because the longitudinal information about the neutrinos is not attainable, the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$
 1372 analysis uses a mass variable, the transverse mass, that exploits information in the transverse plane as a
 1373 proxy for the full invariant mass. The transverse mass is defined in equation 3.6.

$$m_T = \sqrt{(E_T^{\ell\ell} + p_T^{\text{miss}})^2 - |\mathbf{p}_T^{\ell\ell} + \mathbf{p}_T^{\text{miss}}|^2}, \quad (3.6)$$

1374 Here the $E_T^{\ell\ell}$ and $p_T^{\ell\ell}$ are the transverse energy and momentum of the dilepton system, while p_T^{miss} is
 1375 a proxy for the transverse momentum of the di-neutrino system. The track-based p_T^{miss} is used in the m_T
 1376 rather than the calorimeter based E_T^{miss} because it has a better resolution on the true transverse mass.
 1377 Figure 3.11b shows the improvement in the RMS of the difference between the true and reconstructed
 1378 transverse mass in a ggF signal sample. The RMS improves by 4.7 GeV using p_T^{miss} in the m_T calcula-
 1379 tion.

1380 3.6.2 STATISTICAL TREATMENT^{*}

1381 LIKELIHOOD FUNCTION

1382 The statistical analysis of final event candidates is framed as a hypothesis test, where the null hypothe-
1383 sis is background-only (no Standard Model Higgs). The first step in the analysis is to form a likelihood
1384 function for the data. In its simplest form, this likelihood is the probability of observing the number
1385 of events seen in the final signal region given knowledge of the signal strength. Because observation of
1386 events is fundamentally a Poisson counting experiment, this simple likelihood can be expressed as a Pois-
1387 son probability of observing N events given a total number of predicted signal and background events.
1388 This basic likelihood is shown in equation 3.7.

$$\mathcal{L}(\mu) = P(N|\mu S + B) \quad (3.7)$$

1389 Here, P is the Poisson probability density function, N is the total number of observed events, μ is
1390 the signal strength, S is the predicted number of signal events, and B is the predicted number of back-
1391 ground events.

1392 In particle physics, certain background estimates are commonly normalized in so-called “control” re-
1393 gions and those predictions are scaled by the same normalization factor in the signal region. This leads
1394 to a slightly more complicated likelihood, which is a function of both the signal strength and the back-
1395 ground normalization. This is shown in equation 3.8.

$$\mathcal{L}(\mu, \theta) = P(N|\mu S + \theta B) P(N_{\text{CR}}|\theta B_{\text{CR}}) \quad (3.8)$$

1396 Here, θ is a so-called “nuisance parameter”, a parameter that is not a primary parameter of interest but
1397 still enters the likelihood. The second Poisson term adds an extra term to the likelihood, enforcing the
1398 fact that the background normalization must be consistent with the number of observed events in data
1399 in the control region, N_{CR} .

1400 So far, these two formulations of likelihoods have assumed a single signal region and do not take into

*Many thanks to Aaron Armbruster, whose thesis[69] inspired parts of this section.

1401 account any shape information of potential discriminating variables. The $H \rightarrow WW^*$ analysis is di-
 1402 vided into many different categories, and we can perform the same counting experiment described above
 1403 in each individual category. As mentioned in section 3.6.1, the transverse mass is used as the primary dis-
 1404 criminating variable in many of the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ sub-analyses, so additionally we can perform the same
 1405 counting experiment in each bin of the m_T distribution to incorporate some shape information. Thus,
 1406 the total likelihood becomes a product over signal regions and bins of the m_T distribution. Finally, there
 1407 are usually many backgrounds that are normalized in control regions, so the new formulation of the like-
 1408 lihood takes this into account as well by including a product over control regions in the second Poisson
 1409 term. All of these modifications are shown in equation 3.9.

$$\mathcal{L}(\mu, \theta) = \prod_{\substack{\text{SRs } i \\ \text{bins } b}} P \left(N_{ib} \middle| \mu S_{ib} + \sum_{\text{bkg } k} \theta_k B_{kib} \right) \prod_{\text{CRs } l} P \left(N_l \middle| \sum_{\text{bkg } k} \theta_k B_{kl} \right) \quad (3.9)$$

1410 The final step to get the full likelihood used in the analysis is to add nuisance parameters for the sys-
 1411 tematic uncertainties. In cases where the uncertainty does not affect the shape of m_T bin-by-bin, each
 1412 systematic uncertainty ϵ is allowed to affect the expected event yields through a linear response function
 1413 of the nuisance parameter, namely $\nu(\theta) = (1 + \epsilon)^\theta$. If instead the uncertainty does affect the shape,
 1414 the effect is instead parameterized by $\nu_b(\theta) = 1 + \epsilon_b \theta$. The value of the nuisance parameters for the
 1415 systematic uncertainty are constrained with a Gaussian term that is added to the likelihood as well. This
 1416 is of the form $g(\delta|\theta) = e^{-(\delta-\theta)^2/2}/\sqrt{2\pi}$, where δ is the central value and θ is a nuisance parameter.
 1417 Finally, a last term is added to account for the statistical uncertainty in the Monte Carlo samples used,
 1418 which adds an additional poisson term. The full likelihood used in the final statistical analysis is defined

¹⁴¹⁹ in equation 3.10.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}(\mu, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = & \prod_{\substack{\text{SRs i} \\ \text{bins b}}} P\left(N_{ib} \middle| \mu S_{ib} \cdot \prod_{\substack{\text{sig.} \\ r}} \nu_{br}(\theta_r) + \sum_{\text{bkg k}} \theta_k B_{kib} \cdot \prod_{\substack{\text{bkg.} \\ \text{syst.} \\ s}} \nu_{bs}(\theta_s)\right) \\ & \cdot \prod_{\text{CRs l}} P\left(N_l \middle| \sum_{\text{bkg k}} \theta_k B_{kl}\right) \\ & \cdot \prod_{\substack{\text{syst.} \\ t}} g(\delta_t | \theta_t) \cdot \prod_{\text{bkg k}} P(\xi_k | \zeta_k \theta_k) \end{aligned} \quad (3.10)$$

¹⁴²⁰ In the fourth term of the equation, quantifying uncertainty due to finite Monte Carlo sample size, ξ
¹⁴²¹ represents the central value of the background prediction, θ is the associated nuisance parameter, $\zeta =$
¹⁴²² $(B/\delta B)^2$, where δB is the statistical uncertainty of B .

¹⁴²³ The best fit value of the signal strength μ is determined by finding the values of μ and $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ that maxi-
¹⁴²⁴ mize the likelihood, while setting $\delta = 0$ and $\xi = \zeta$.

¹⁴²⁵ Once the likelihood is defined, a test statistic must be built for use in hypothesis testing.

¹⁴²⁶ TEST STATISTIC

¹⁴²⁷ To distinguish whether the data match a background only or background and signal hypothesis, a test
¹⁴²⁸ statistic must be used. The $H \rightarrow WW^*$ analysis used the profile likelihood technique[70]. The first step
¹⁴²⁹ in formulating this test statistic is to define the profile likelihood ratio, shown in equation 3.11.

$$\lambda(\mu) = \frac{\mathcal{L}(\mu, \hat{\theta}_\mu)}{\mathcal{L}(\hat{\mu}, \hat{\theta})} \quad (3.11)$$

¹⁴³⁰ Here $\hat{\theta}_\mu$ is the value of θ that maximizes the likelihood for the choice of μ being tested. Additionally,
¹⁴³¹ $\hat{\theta}$ and $\hat{\mu}$ represent the values of θ and μ that gives the overall maximum value of the likelihood.

¹⁴³² Once this is defined, a test statistic q_μ is constructed. This is shown in equation 3.12.

$$q_\mu = -2 \ln \lambda(\mu) \quad (3.12)$$

₁₄₃₃ A higher value of q_μ means that the data are more incompatible with the hypothesized value of μ , and
₁₄₃₄ q_0 then corresponds to the value of the test statistic for the background only hypothesis. A p_0 value is
₁₄₃₅ then defined to quantify the compatibility between the data and the null hypothesis. The p_0 value is the
₁₄₃₆ probability of obtaining a value of q_0 larger than the observed value, and this is shown in equation 3.13.

$$p_0 = \int_{q_0^{\text{obs}}}^{\infty} f(q_\mu | \mu = 0) dq_\mu \quad (3.13)$$

₁₄₃₇ Here $f(q_\mu)$ is the probability distribution function of the test statistic. Finally, the p_0 value can be
₁₄₃₈ converted into a signal significance, using the formula in equation 3.14, or the one-sided tail of the Gaussian
₁₄₃₉ distribution.

$$Z_0 = \sqrt{2} \operatorname{erf}^{-1}(1 - 2p_0) \quad (3.14)$$

₁₄₄₀ The threshold for discovery used in particle physics is $Z_0 \geq 5$, more commonly known as a value of
₁₄₄₁ 5σ .

The real voyage of discovery consists not in seeking new landscapes, but in having new eyes.

Marcel Proust

4

1442

1443

1444

The discovery of the Higgs boson and the role of the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ channel

1445 4.1 INTRODUCTION

1446 This chapter presents the results of the search for the Higgs boson in 4.8 fb^{-1} collected at $\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ TeV}$
1447 and 5.8 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 8 \text{ TeV}$. The results of three searches at $\sqrt{s} = 8 \text{ TeV}$ in the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$,
1448 $H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$, and $H \rightarrow ZZ \rightarrow 4\ell$ channels are combined with results of searches at $\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ TeV}$
1449 in the same search channels (as well as the $H \rightarrow \tau\tau$ production and associated production searches for
1450 $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$). The results of this combination are a 5.9σ detection of a new particle consistent with a Higgs
1451 boson. Rather than going into detail for all of the different Higgs decay searches, this chapter will discuss
1452 the three most sensitive channels and in particular focus on $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$. While the focus is
1453 on WW^* , some of the ZZ^* and $\gamma\gamma$ results are shown for completeness. The results not discussed here

1454 can be found in the ATLAS Higgs discovery publication[[22](#)].

1455 4.2 DATA AND SIMULATION SAMPLES

1456 The data sample used for the following results was taken in 2011 and 2012 at center of mass energies of 7
1457 and 8 TeV, respectively, with 4.8 fb^{-1} collected at 7 TeV and 5.8 fb^{-1} collected at 8 TeV. Higgs pro-
1458 duction in the gluon fusion and vector boson fusion modes is modeled with **POWHEG** for the hard scat-
1459 tering event and **PYTHIA** for the showing and hadronization. Associated production of a Higgs with a
1460 vector boson or top quarks is modeled via **PYTHIA**.

1461 Table 4.1 shows the Monte Carlo generators used for modeling the signal and background processes
1462 relevant for the three analyses to be discussed.

Process	Generator
$\text{ggF}, \text{VBF } H$	POWHEG + PYTHIA
$WH, ZH, t\bar{t}H$	PYTHIA
$W + \text{jets}, Z/\gamma^* + \text{jets}$	ALPGEN + HERWIG
$t\bar{t}, tW, tb$	MC@NLO + HERWIG
tqb	ACERMC + PYTHIA
$q\bar{q} \rightarrow WW$	MC@NLO + HERWIG
$gg \rightarrow WW$	GG2WW+ HERWIG
$q\bar{q} \rightarrow ZZ$	POWHEG + PYTHIA
$gg \rightarrow ZZ$	GG2ZZ+ HERWIG
WZ	MADGRAPH+ PYTHIA , HERWIG
$W\gamma + \text{jets}$	ALPGEN + HERWIG
$W\gamma^*$	MADGRAPH+ PYTHIA
$q\bar{q}/gg \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$	SHERPA

Table 4.1: Monte carlo generators used to model signal and background for the Higgs search[[22](#)].

1463 4.3 $H \rightarrow WW \rightarrow e\nu\mu\nu$ SEARCH

1464 The $H \rightarrow WW \rightarrow e\nu\mu\nu$ search is unique compared to the ZZ and $\gamma\gamma$ channels. The Higgs mass can-
1465 not be fully reconstructed due to the presence of neutrinos in the final state, so the transverse mass m_T
1466 is used as the final discriminating variable. Compared to the other channels, there are more backgrounds

¹⁴⁶⁷ here as well, as discussed in chapter 3. The same flavor final states are excluded from this search due to
¹⁴⁶⁸ high pileup in the 8 TeV dataset.

¹⁴⁶⁹ **4.3.1 EVENT SELECTION**

¹⁴⁷⁰ The analysis requires two opposite charge isolated leptons, with the leading (sub-leading) lepton required
¹⁴⁷¹ to have $p_T > 25(15)$ GeV. The events are separated into different signal regions depending on which
¹⁴⁷² flavor of lepton is leading ($e\mu$ for leading electron, μe for leading muon). Strict lepton quality cuts are
¹⁴⁷³ applied to the sample to reduce backgrounds from fake leptons.

¹⁴⁷⁴ Jets are reconstructed with the anti- k_T algorithm with a radius parameter $R = 0.4$. The jets are
¹⁴⁷⁵ required to have $p_T > 25$ GeV and $|eta| < 4.5$, with jets in the tracking volume required to have a
¹⁴⁷⁶ jet vertex fraction of 0.5 and jets in the forward region required to have $p_T > 30$ GeV. The analysis is
¹⁴⁷⁷ separated into three different signal regions based on jet multiplicity: $n_j = 0, 1, \geq 2$.

¹⁴⁷⁸ To indicate the presence of neutrinos in the event, a requirement of $E_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss}} > 25$ GeV is made*. This
¹⁴⁷⁹ requirement significantly reduces the QCD multijet and Z/γ^* + jets backgrounds. Figure 4.1 shows the
¹⁴⁸⁰ distribution of n_j in data and simulation after applying these “pre-selection” requirements.

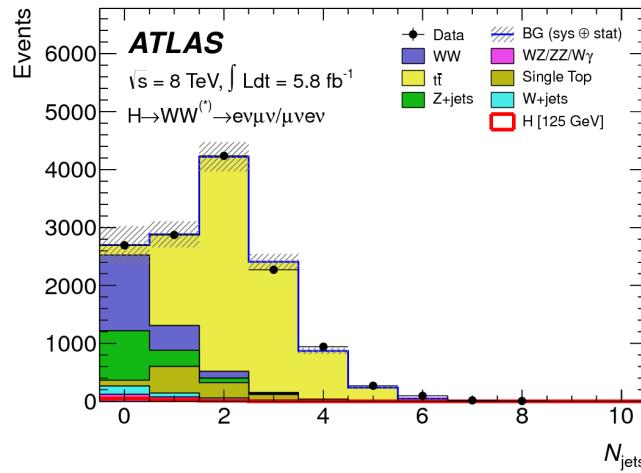


Figure 4.1: Jet multiplicity distribution in data and MC after applying lepton, jet, and $E_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss}}$ selections. The WW and top backgrounds have been normalized using control samples, and the hashed band indicates the total uncertainty on the prediction. [22]

*For the definition of $E_{T,\text{rel}}^{\text{miss}}$, see chapter 3

1481 Additional selections are applied to require the dilepton topology to correspond to that of a SM
1482 Higgs. The requirements are presented here - more detailed discussion on the motivation for each re-
1483 quirement is saved for Chapter 5. In all of the jet multiplicity channels, the dilepton system is required to
1484 have a small gap in azimuthal angle, $\Delta\phi_{\ell\ell} < 1.8$. Similarly, the $m_{\ell\ell}$ is required to be less than 50 GeV
1485 in the lower jet multiplicity channels and less than 80 GeV in the $n_j \geq 2$ channel. In the $n_j = 0$
1486 channel, the magnitude of the dilepton p_T , $p_T^{\ell\ell}$, is required to be greater than 30 GeV.

1487 In the higher jet multiplicity channels ($n_j \geq 1$), the top background is a more important component
1488 and must be reduced. The total transverse momentum p_T^{sum} is thus required to be less than 30 GeV.
1489 Additionally, the di- τ invariant mass $m_{\tau\tau}$ (dilepton mass computed under the assumption that the neu-
1490 trinos from the τ decay are emitted collinear to the charged leptons) is used to reject $Z \rightarrow \tau\tau$ events by
1491 requiring $|m_{\tau\tau} - m_Z| > 25$ GeV. These variables are also discussed in more detail in Chapter 5.

1492 In the $n_j \geq 2$ channel, requirements are made to isolate the VBF contribution to Higgs production.
1493 The kinematics of the two leading jets are used to make these requirements. In particular, the event must
1494 have $\Delta y_{jj} > 3.8$ and $m_{jj} > 500$ GeV, along with a veto on having any additional jets with rapidity
1495 between the two leading jets.

1496 4.3.2 BACKGROUND ESTIMATION

1497 The details of the background estimation techniques used in the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ analysis are dis-
1498 cussed in section 5.5. As that section refers to a later iteration of the analysis, a general discussion is given
1499 here for completeness. The dominant backgrounds are SM WW production and top (both pair and
1500 single) production, and these backgrounds have their normalizations estimated from dedicated control
1501 regions while their shapes are taken from simulation.

1502 The control sample for the Standard Model WW background is defined by making the same require-
1503 ments as the signal region with the $m_{\ell\ell}$ requirement inverted (now requiring $m_{\ell\ell} > 80$ GeV) and
1504 removing the $\Delta\phi_{\ell\ell}$ requirement. This creates a control sample that is 70% (40%) pure in the 0(1)-jet
1505 region. The correction to the pure MC-based background estimate is quantified by defining a normal-
1506 ization factor β which is the ratio of the data yield to the MC yield ($N_{\text{data}}/N_{\text{MC}}$) in this control sample.

1507 Table 4.2 shows the WW normalization factors in the $n_j = 0$ and $n_j = 1$ bins (the $n_j \geq 2$ estimate is
 1508 taken directly from MC).

n_j	β_{WW}	β_t
= 0	1.06 ± 0.06	1.11 ± 0.06
= 1	0.99 ± 0.15	1.11 ± 0.05
≥ 2	-	1.01 ± 0.26

Table 4.2: Normalization factors (ratio of data and MC yields in a control sample) for the Standard Model WW and top backgrounds in the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ analysis [22]. Only statistical uncertainties are shown.

1509 The top background estimate is also computed separately in each jet multiplicity bin. In the $n_j = 0$
 1510 channel, the background is first normalized using data after pre-selection requirements with no selection
 1511 on n_j . Then, a dedicated b -tagged control sample is used to evaluate the ratio of one-jet to two-jet events
 1512 in data. The details of this technique are shown in reference [71]. In the $n_j = 1$ and the $n_j \geq 2$ regions,
 1513 the top background is normalized in a control sample where the signal region selections are applied,
 1514 but the b -jet veto is reversed and the Higgs topology requirements on $m_{\ell\ell}$ and $\Delta\phi_{\ell\ell}$ are removed. The
 1515 resulting normalization factors for these techniques are shown in table 4.2.

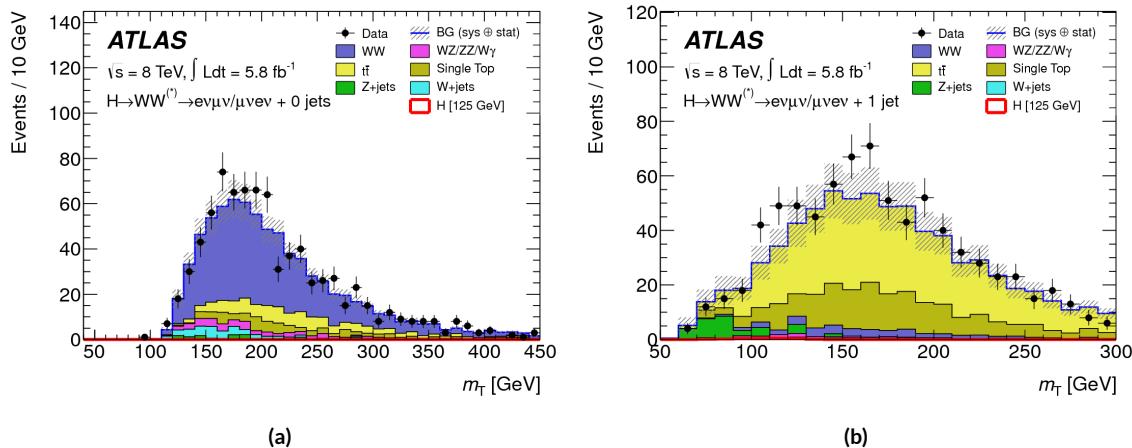


Figure 4.2: Comparison of m_T between data and simulation in the $n_j = 0$ WW (a) and $n_j = 1$ top (b) control samples [22]

1516 The control samples which are used for background normalization can also be used to validate the
 1517 modeling of the m_T distribution for each background. Figure 4.2 shows the comparison between data

1518 and MC for the m_T distribution after correcting the normalization of the backgrounds in the WW and
 1519 top control regions. Good agreement between data and simulation is seen in both cases.

1520 The $W + \text{jets}$ background estimate is taken entirely from data using a control sample with one well
 1521 reconstructed lepton and one anti-identified lepton. All other backgrounds are taken purely from simu-
 1522 lation.

1523 4.3.3 SYSTEMATIC UNCERTAINTIES

1524 The systematic uncertainties that have the largest impact on the analysis are the theoretical uncertainties
 1525 associated with the signal cross section, and these are shared with the ZZ^* and $\gamma\gamma$ channels. The un-
 1526 certainties resulting from variations of the QCD scale are $+7\% / -8\%$ on the final singal yield. Those
 1527 coming from variations of the parton distribution function (PDF) used in the simulation add a $\pm 8\%$
 1528 uncertainty on the yield. The uncertainties on the branching ratios of the Higgs are $\pm 5\%$.

1529 The main experimental uncertainties come from variations of the jet energy scale (JES), jet energy
 1530 resolution, pile-up, E_T^{miss} , b -tagging efficiency, $W + \text{jets}$ background estimate, and integrated luminosity.
 1531 For more details, see reference [22].

1532 4.3.4 RESULTS

1533 Table 4.3 shows the signal and background yields in the final signal region after normalizing the back-
 1534 grounds according to the methods described above.

	$n_j = 0$	$n_j = 1$	$n_j \geq 2$
Signal	20 ± 4	5 ± 2	0.34 ± 0.07
WW	101 ± 13	12 ± 5	0.10 ± 0.14
Other dibosons	12 ± 3	1.9 ± 1.1	0.10 ± 0.10
$t\bar{t}$	8 ± 2	6 ± 2	0.15 ± 0.10
Single top	3.4 ± 1.5	3.7 ± 1.6	-
$Z/\gamma^* + \text{jets}$	1.9 ± 1.3	0.10 ± 0.10	-
$W + \text{jets}$	15 ± 7	2 ± 1	-
Total background	142 ± 16	26 ± 6	0.35 ± 0.18
Observed in data	185	38	0

Table 4.3: Data and expected yields for signal and background in the final $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ signal region.
 Uncertainties shown are both statistical and systematic. [22]

1535 Figure 4.3 shows the m_T distribution in the $n_j \leq 1$ channels for 8 TeV data. (No events are observed
 1536 in data in the $n_j \geq 2$ channels in this dataset). The excess shown here relatively flat as a function of
 1537 hypothesized Higgs mass. The combined 7 and 8 TeV data gives an excess with local significance of 2.8σ
 1538 with an expected significance of 2.3σ , corresponding to a μ measurement of 1.3 ± 0.5 .

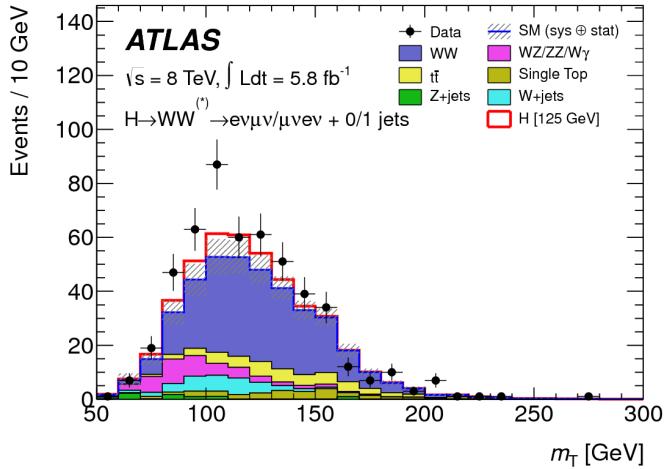


Figure 4.3: m_T distribution in the $H \rightarrow WW \rightarrow e\nu\mu\nu$ $n_j \leq 1$ channels for 8 TeV data[22].

1539 4.4 $H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ SEARCH

1540 The $H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ search is in essence a search for a peaked excess above the falling SM diphoton mass spec-
 1541 trum, with $m_{\gamma\gamma}$ as the ultimate discriminating variable. Events are selected by requiring two isolated
 1542 photons, with the leading (sub-leading) photon required to have $E_T > 40(30)$ GeV. In the 8 TeV
 1543 data, the photons are required to pass cut-based identification criteria consistent with a photon in the
 1544 electromagnetic calorimeter and little leakage in the hadronic calorimeter.

1545 The main challenges for this analysis are accurate mass reconstruction and background estimation.
 1546 In order to accurately reconstruct the invariant mass of the di-photon system, both the energy and di-
 1547 rection of the photons must be measured well. Therefore, the identification of the primary vertex of the
 1548 hard interaction is particularly important, and is done using a multivariate likelihood which combines
 1549 information about the photon direction and vertex position. The background is modeled with a falling
 1550 spectrum in $m_{\gamma\gamma}$ that is parameterized by different functions depending on the category of the event.

1551 4.4.1 RESULTS

1552 The resulting diphoton mass spectrum is shown in figure 4.4. The best fit mass value in the $\gamma\gamma$ channel
 1553 alone in the combined 7 and 8 TeV data is 126.5 GeV. The local significance at this point is 4.5σ , with
 1554 an expected significance of 2.5σ . Therefore, the measured signal strength μ is 1.8 ± 0.5 in this channel.

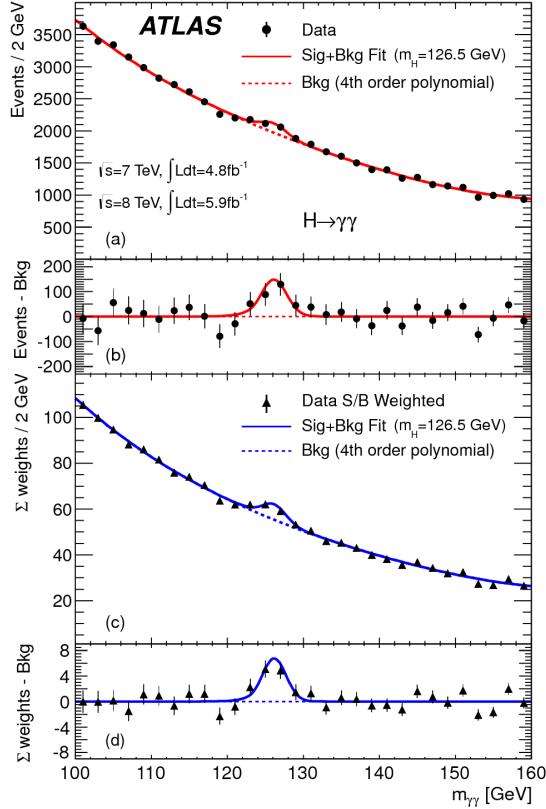


Figure 4.4: Diphoton mass spectrum in 7 and 8 TeV data. Panel a) shows the unweighted data distribution superimposed on the background fit, while panel c) shows the data where each event category is weighted by its signal to background ratio. Panels b) and d) show the respective distributions with background subtracted[22].

1555 4.5 $H \rightarrow ZZ \rightarrow 4\ell$ SEARCH

1556 The $H \rightarrow ZZ \rightarrow 4\ell$ analysis searches for a Standard Model Higgs boson decaying to two Z bosons,
 1557 each of which decays to a pair of same flavor, opposite charge isolated leptons. The ultimate discriminat-
 1558 ing variable is $m_{4\ell}$, or the invariant mass of the four selected leptons. The ℓ denotes an e or μ as with the
 1559 $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ analysis.

1560 Four distinct signal regions are constructed depending on the flavors of the final state, additionally
 1561 separated by the flavor of the leading lepton pair. These are referred to as $4e$, $2e2\mu$, $2\mu2e$, 4μ .
 1562 The main backgrounds in the $H \rightarrow ZZ \rightarrow 4\ell$ search are continuum ZZ^* production, $Z + \text{jets}$ pro-
 1563 duction, and $t\bar{t}$. The $m_{4\ell}$ distribution for background is estimated from simulation. The normalization
 1564 of the SM ZZ^* background is also taken from MC simulation, while the $Z + \text{jets}$ and $t\bar{t}$ normalizations
 1565 are taken from data-driven methods.

1566 4.5.1 RESULTS

1567 Figure 4.5 shows the $m_{4\ell}$ spectrum measured in the 7 and 8 TeV datasets. The total number of events
 1568 observed in the window between 120 and 130 GeV is 13, with 6 events in the 4μ channel, 2 events in
 1569 the $4e$ channel, and 5 events in the $2e2\mu/2\mu2e$. The best fit μ value in the combined 7 and 8 TeV data
 1570 occurs at 125 GeV and is measured to be 1.2 ± 0.6 . The observed significance at this mass is 3.6σ , with
 1571 an expected significance of 2.7σ .

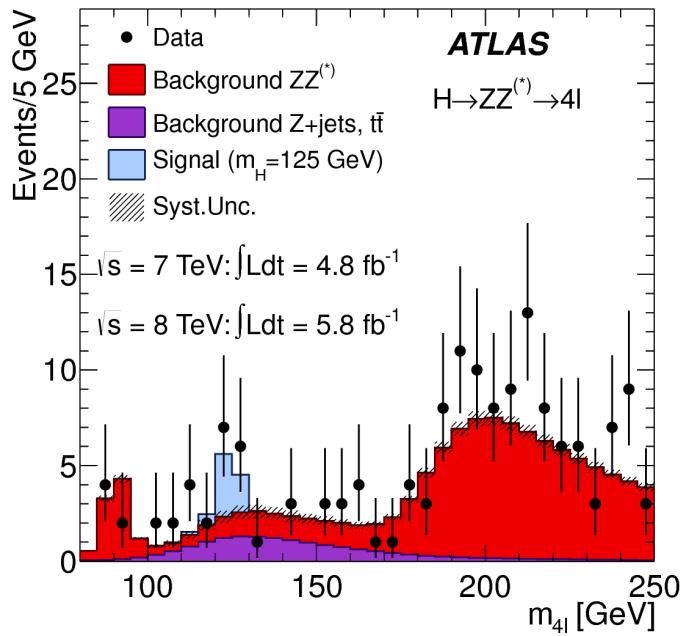


Figure 4.5: Four lepton invariant mass spectrum ($m_{4\ell}$) in 7 and 8 TeV data compared to background estimate. A 125 GeV SM Higgs signal is shown in blue[22].

1572 4.6 COMBINED RESULTS

1573 The statistical interpretation of the combined results is undertaken as described in section 3.6.2, with a
 1574 hypothesis test based on a likelihood ratio parameterized by the Higgs signal strength μ . The null hy-
 1575 pothesis corresponds to $\mu = 0$, while the SM Higgs corresponds to $\mu = 1$.

1576 Table 4.4 summarizes the properties of the individual channels as well as the significances of the ex-
 1577 cesses seen. The most significant observed local excess comes from the $\gamma\gamma$ channel. Figure 4.6 shows a
 1578 comparison of the observed local p_0 values as a function of hypothesized mass for the three different
 1579 search channels. Both the ZZ^* and $\gamma\gamma$ channels have very peaked excesses, while the WW^* excess can
 1580 be seen as very broad because the m_T distribution does not provide detailed information about the true
 1581 Higgs mass.

Channel	Fit var.	Observed Z_l	Expected Z_l	$\hat{\mu}$
$H \rightarrow ZZ^* \rightarrow 4\ell$	$m_{4\ell}$	3.6	2.7	1.2 ± 0.6
$H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$	$m_{\gamma\gamma}$	4.5	2.5	1.8 ± 0.5
$H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow e\nu\mu\nu$	m_T	2.8	2.3	1.3 ± 0.5
Combined	-	6.0	4.9	1.4 ± 0.3

Table 4.4: Summary of the expected and observed significance and measured signal strengths in the combined 7 and 8 TeV datasets for the Higgs discovery analysis[22].

1582 Figure 4.7 shows the combined exclusion limit, p_0 , and signal strength. The highest local excess comes
 1583 at a value of 126.5 GeV and corresponds to a 6.0σ observed excess.

1584 Figure 4.8 shows a comparison of the measured signal strengths between the different Higgs search
 1585 channels. All measured μ are consistent with unity within their uncertainty, and the combined μ mea-
 1586 surement is 1.4 ± 0.3 .

1587 The likelihood can also be computed in a two-dimensional plane of m_H and μ , and this is shown in
 1588 figure 4.9. The figure shows that while the $\gamma\gamma$ and ZZ^* channels have very good mass resolution, the
 1589 excess in WW^* covers a broad mass range. The banana shape of the WW^* result is due to the fact that
 1590 the excess in this channel can either be explained by increasing the signal strength or by changing the
 1591 mass (and thus the cross section). The two parameters are correlated due to the lack of mass sensitivity in
 1592 this channel.

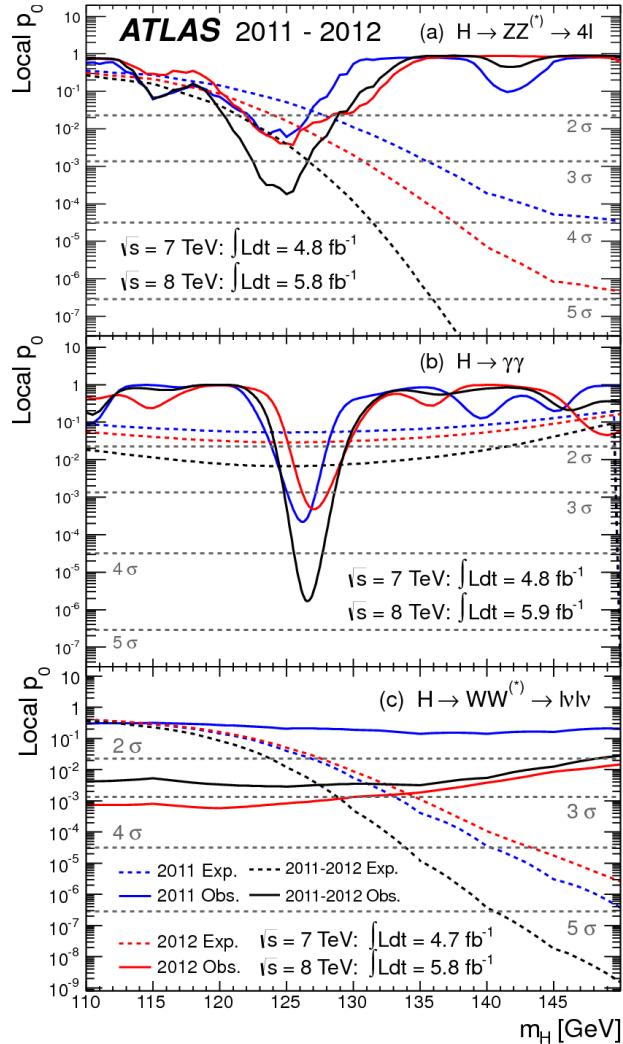


Figure 4.6: Local p_0 distribution as a function of hypothesized Higgs mass for the $H \rightarrow ZZ^* \rightarrow 4\ell$ (a), $H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ (b), and $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ (c) channels. Dashed curves show expected results, while solid curves show observed. Red curves are from 7 TeV data, blue curves from 8 TeV, and black curved combined[22].

Because multiple Higgs mass points are searched for, the local significance must be corrected for a look-elsewhere effect to compute a true global significance. The global significance for finding a Higgs anywhere in the mass range of 110 GeV to 600 GeV is 5.1σ . This increases slightly to 5.3σ if only mass range from 110 to 150 GeV.

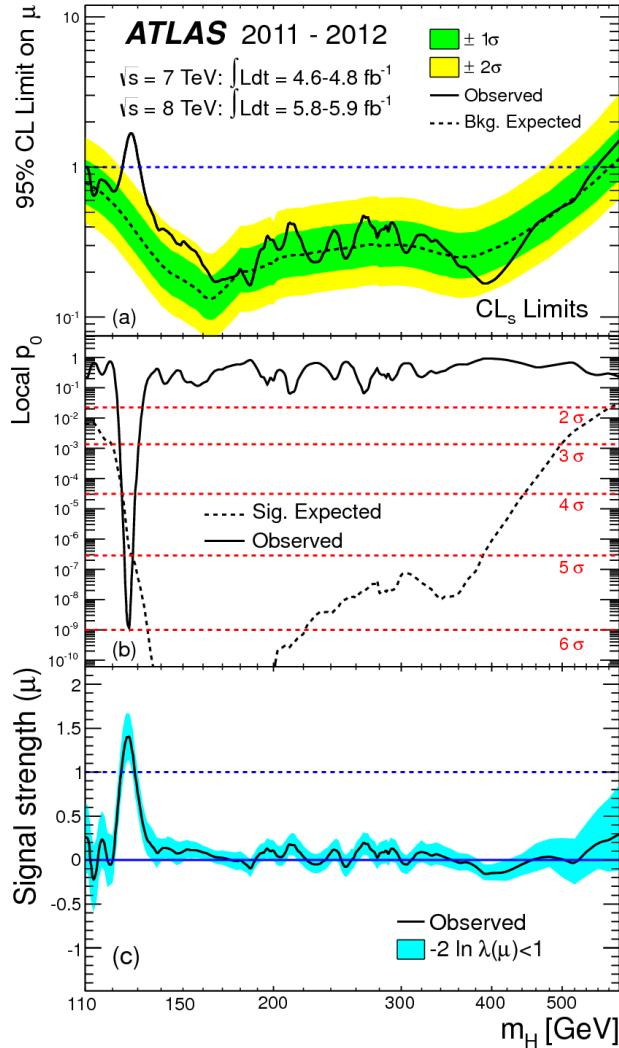


Figure 4.7: Combined 95% CL limits (a), local p_0 values (b), and signal strength measurement (c) as a function of Higgs mass[22].

1597 4.7 CONCLUSION

1598 A search for the production of a Standard Model Higgs boson was conducted in 4.8 fb^{-1} collected at
 1599 $\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ TeV}$ and 5.8 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 8 \text{ TeV}$. A new particle consistent with the Higgs boson was
 1600 observed, with a mass of 126.5 GeV and a global (local) significance of $5.1(6.0)\sigma$. This is the first dis-
 1601 covery level observation of a particle consistent with the Higgs.

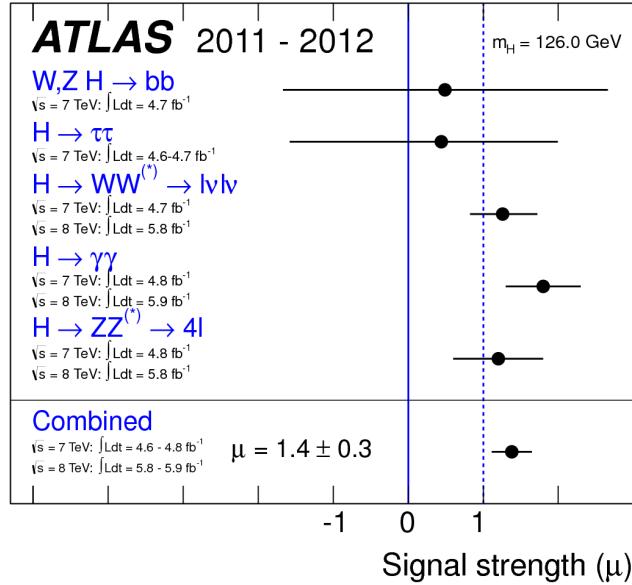


Figure 4.8: Comparison of measured signal strength μ for a 126 GeV Higgs in the 7 and 8 TeV datasets[22].

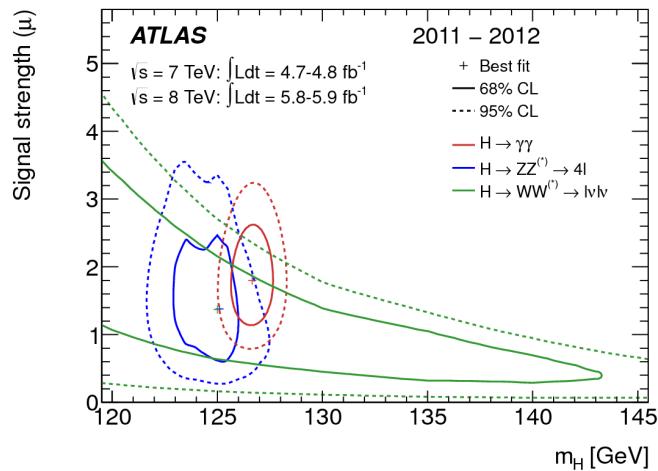


Figure 4.9: Two dimensional likelihood as a function of signal strength μ and Higgs mass m_H [22].

*The imagination of nature is far, far greater than the
imagination of man.*

Richard Feynman

5

1602

1603

Observation of Vector Boson Fusion

1604

production of $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$

1605 **5.1 INTRODUCTION**

1606 After the discovery of a particle consistent with the Higgs boson, the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ analysis had two main
1607 goals. The first goal was to increase the sensitivity of the analysis to fully confirm that the $H \rightarrow WW^*$
1608 process did indeed exist. The second goal was to characterize the particle as much as possible, including
1609 searching for the lower cross-section production modes, in order to confirm that it was indeed a Higgs
1610 boson. This chapter presents a dedicated search for Vector Boson Fusion (VBF) production of a Higgs
1611 boson decaying via the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ mode. First, basics of the topology of VBF production
1612 are presented. Then, the details of the analysis are shown, including signal region definition, background
1613 estimation techniques, and systematic uncertainties. Finally, the results of the analysis are presented. As

1614 will be shown, this analysis is the first and most sensitive observation of the VBF production mode of the
1615 Higgs on ATLAS.

1616 In the VBF channel, there are both a selection requirement based signal region analysis (known as the
1617 “cut-based”) and a multivariate analysis which uses a boosted decision tree (known as the BDT analysis).
1618 The focus of this chapter will be on the cut-based signal region, as this is an important component of the
1619 VBF analysis and in particular acts as strong validation for the final BDT result. Connections between
1620 the cut-based and BDT analyses will be discussed where appropriate.

1621 5.2 DATA AND SIMULATION SAMPLES

1622 The results presented here are with 20.3 fb^{-1} taken at $\sqrt{s} = 8 \text{ TeV}$ and 4.5 fb^{-1} taken at $\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ TeV}$.
1623 The details of the LHC and detector conditions during this period are given in Chapter 2. The trigger
1624 selection defining the dataset is discussed in section 5.2.1. The simulation samples used for signal and
1625 background modeling are given in section 5.2.2.

1626 5.2.1 TRIGGERS

1627 The analysis uses a combination of single lepton and dilepton triggers to allow lowering of the p_T thresh-
1628 olds and increased signal acceptance. The p_T threshold on the leptons is a particularly important consid-
1629 eration for this signal. Because the second W produced in the decay can be off-shell, it tends to pro-
1630 duce lower momentum leptons. Thus, being able to lower the p_T threshold while still maintaining
1631 a low background rate is critical. Figure 5.1 shows an example of the subleading lepton p_T for a VBF
1632 $H \rightarrow WW^*$ signal compared to the corresponding $t\bar{t}$ background. Note that the lepton p_T spectrum is
1633 considerably softer in the signal sample.

1634 As discussed in Chapter 2, there are multiple levels in the ATLAS trigger system, and there are differ-
1635 ent p_T thresholds imposed for the leptons at each level. Additionally, some triggers have a loose selection
1636 on the isolation of the lepton (looser than that applied offline in the analysis object selection). Table 5.1
1637 shows the thresholds used for single lepton triggers, while table 5.2 shows the thresholds coming from
1638 di-lepton triggers. The single lepton trigger efficiency for muons that pass the analysis object selection is

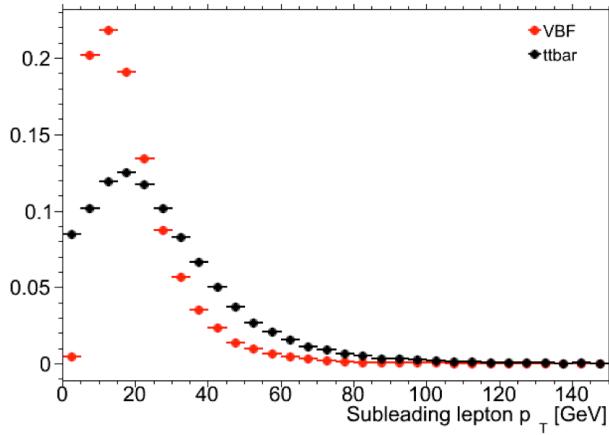


Figure 5.1: A comparison of the subleading lepton p_T spectrum between VBF $H \rightarrow WW^*$ production and $t\bar{t}$ background

1639 70% for muons in the barrel region ($|\eta| < 1.05$) and 90% in the endcap region. The electron trigger ef-
1640 ficiency increases with electron p_T but the average is approximately 90%. These efficiencies are measured
1641 by combined performance and trigger signature groups[72, 73].

	Level-1 threshold	High-level threshold
Electron	18	$24i$
	30	60
Muon	15	$24i$
		36

Table 5.1: Single lepton triggers used for electrons and muons. A logical “or” of the triggers listed for each lepton type is taken. Units are in GeV, and the i denotes an isolation requirement in the trigger.

	Level-1 threshold	High-level threshold
ee	10 and 10	12 and 12
$\mu\mu$	15	18 and 8
$e\mu$	10 and 6	12 and 8

Table 5.2: Di-lepton triggers used for different flavor combinations. The two thresholds listed refer to leading and sub-leading leptons, respectively. The di-muon trigger only requires a single lepton at level-1.

1642 The combination of all triggers shown gives good efficiency for signal events. This efficiency is sum-
1643 marized in table 5.3. The relative improvement in efficiency by adding the dilepton triggers is also shown
1644 in the same table. The largest gain comes in the $\mu\mu$ channel. Overall the trigger selection shows a good
1645 efficiency for $H \rightarrow WW^*$ signal events.

Channel	Trigger efficiency	Gain from 2ℓ trigger
ee	97%	9.1%
$\mu\mu$	89%	18.5%
$e\mu$	95%	8.3%
μe	81%	8.2%

Table 5.3: Trigger efficiency for signal events and relative gain of adding a dilepton trigger on top of the single lepton trigger selection. The first lepton is the leading, while the second is the sub-leading. Efficiencies shown here are for the ggF signal in the $n_j = 0$ category but are comparable for the VBF signal.

1646 5.2.2 MONTE CARLO SAMPLES

1647 Modeling of signal and background processes in the signal region, in particular for the m_T distribution,
 1648 is an important consideration for the final interpretation of the analysis. Therefore, careful consideration
 1649 must be paid to which Monte Carlo (MC) generators are used for specific processes. With the exception
 1650 of the $W + \text{jet}$ and multijet backgrounds, the m_T shape used as the final discriminant is taken from simu-
 1651 lation. (Many backgrounds are normalized from data, as described in section 5.5).

1652 Table 5.4 shows the MC generators used for the signal and background processes, as well as their cross
 1653 sections. In order to include corrections up to next-to-leading order (NLO) in the QCD coupling con-
 1654 stant α_s , the `POWHEG` [74] generator is often used. In some cases, only leading order generators like
 1655 `ACERMC` [75] and `GG2VV` [76] are available for the process in question. If the process requires good
 1656 modeling for very high parton multiplicities, the `SHERPA` [77] and `ALPGEN` [78] generators are used
 1657 to provide merged calculations for five or fewer additional partons. These matrix element level calcula-
 1658 tions must then be additionally matched to models of the underlying event, hadronization, and parton
 1659 shower. There are four possible generators for this: `SHERPA`, `PYTHIA 6`[79], `PYTHIA 8`[80], or `HERWIG`
 1660 [81] + `JIMMY` [82]. The simulation additionally requires an input parton distribution function (PDF).
 1661 The `CT10`[83] PDFs are used for `SHERPA` and `POWHEG` simulated samples, while `CTEQ6Li`[84] is used
 1662 for `ALPGEN + HERWIG` and `ACERMC` simulations. The Drell-Yan samples are reweighted to the `MRST`
 1663 [85] PDFs, as these are found to give the best agreement between data and simulation.

1664 Once the basic hard scattering process is simulated, it must be passed through a detector simulation
 1665 and additional pile-up events must be overlaid. The pile-up events are modeled with `PYTHIA 8`, and the

Process	MC generator	$\sigma \cdot \mathcal{B}$ (pb)
Signal		
ggF	$H \rightarrow WW^*$ POWHEG +PYTHIA 8	0.435
VBF	$H \rightarrow WW^*$ POWHEG +PYTHIA 8	0.0356
VH	$H \rightarrow WW^*$ PYTHIA 8	0.0253
WW		
$q\bar{q} \rightarrow WW$ and $qg \rightarrow WW$	POWHEG +PYTHIA 6	5.68
$gg \rightarrow WW$	GG2VV +HERWIG	0.196
$(q\bar{q} \rightarrow W) + (q\bar{q} \rightarrow W)$	PYTHIA 8	0.480
$q\bar{q} \rightarrow WW$	SHERPA	5.68
VBS $WW + 2$ jets	SHERPA	0.0397
Top quarks		
$t\bar{t}$	POWHEG +PYTHIA 6	26.6
Wt	POWHEG +PYTHIA 6	2.35
$tq\bar{b}$	ACERMC +PYTHIA 6	28.4
$t\bar{b}$	POWHEG +PYTHIA 6	1.82
Other dibosons (VV)		
$W\gamma$ ($p_T^\gamma > 8$ GeV)	ALPGEN +HERWIG	369
$W\gamma^*$ ($m_{\ell\ell} \leq 7$ GeV)	SHERPA	12.2
WZ ($m_{\ell\ell} > 7$ GeV)	POWHEG +PYTHIA 8	12.7
VBS $WZ + 2$ jets	SHERPA	0.0126
($m_{\ell\ell} > 7$ GeV)		
$Z\gamma$ ($p_T^\gamma > 8$ GeV)	SHERPA	163
$Z\gamma^*$ (min. $m_{\ell\ell} \leq 4$ GeV)	SHERPA	7.31
ZZ ($m_{\ell\ell} > 4$ GeV)	POWHEG +PYTHIA 8	0.733
$ZZ \rightarrow \ell\ell\nu\nu$ ($m_{\ell\ell} > 4$ GeV)	POWHEG +PYTHIA 8	0.504
Drell-Yan		
Z ($m_{\ell\ell} > 10$ GeV)	ALPGEN +HERWIG	16500
VBF $Z + 2$ jets	SHERPA	5.36
($m_{\ell\ell} > 7$ GeV)		

Table 5.4: Monte Carlo samples used to model the signal and background processes[21].

ATLAS detector is simulated with GEANT4[86]. Because of the unique phase space of the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ analysis, events are sometimes filtered at generator level to allow for more efficient generation of relevant events. The efficiency of the trigger in MC simulation does not always match the measured efficiency in

1669 data, so trigger scale factors are applied to correct the MC efficiency to the data. These are derived by the
1670 combined performance groups[[72](#), [73](#)].

1671 **5.3 OBJECT SELECTION**

1672 In order to define the signal region, the analysis must first select the objects to be considered. The de-
1673 tails of the object reconstruction algorithms are discussed in Chapter 2, while this section gives specific
1674 selection cuts used in the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ analysis.

1675 The first step in this process is to select a primary vertex candidates. The event’s primary vertex is the
1676 vertex with the largest sum of p_T^2 for associated tracks and is required to have at least three tracks with
1677 $p_T > 450$ MeV. Many of the object selection cuts are then made relative to this chosen primary vertex.

1678 **5.3.1 MUONS**

1679 The analysis uses combined muon candidates, where a track in the Inner Detector has been matched
1680 to a standalone track in the Muon Spectrometer. The track parameters are combined statistically in the
1681 muon reconstruction algorithm[[16](#)]. The muons are required to be within $|\eta| < 2.5$ and have a $p_T >$
1682 10 GeV. To reduce backgrounds coming from mis-reconstructed leptons, there are requirements on
1683 the impact parameter of the muon relative to the primary vertex. The transverse impact parameter d_0
1684 is required to be small relative to its estimated uncertainty, the exact cut value being $d_0/\sigma_{d_0} < 3$. The
1685 longitudinal impact parameter z_0 must satisfy $|z_0 \sin \theta| < 1$ mm.

1686 As discussed previously, the muons must also be isolated. There are two types of lepton isolations
1687 that are calculated: track-based and calorimeter-based. For muons, the track-based isolation is defined
1688 using the scalar sum $\sum p_T$ for tracks with $p_T > 1$ GeV (excluding the muon’s track) within a cone of
1689 $\Delta R = 0.3$ (0.4) for muon with $p_T > 15$ GeV ($10 < p_T < 15$ GeV). The final isolation requirement
1690 is made my requiring that this scalar sum be no more than a certain fraction of the muon’s p_T . This re-
1691 quirement varies with muon p_T and the exact cuts are defined in table 5.5.

1692 The calorimeter-based muon isolation is defined using as a $\sum E_T$ calculated from calorimeter cells
1693 using the same cone size as the track-based isolation but excluding cells with $\Delta R < 0.05$ around the

1694 muon. This requirement is also defined as a cut on the ratio of the sum to the muon p_T and varies with
1695 muon p_T . The cut values are also given in table 5.5.

1696 The isolation requirements loosen as a function of p_T to allow for larger signal acceptance. At low p_T ,
1697 the isolation is tightened to reduce the $W + \text{jets}$ background which arises from a misidentified lepton.

p_T range (GeV)	Calorimeter isolation	Track isolation
10 – 15	0.06	0.06
15 – 20	0.12	0.08
20 – 25	0.18	0.12
> 25	0.30	0.12

Table 5.5: p_T dependent isolation requirements for muons. Muons are required to have the amount of calorimeter or track based cone sums be less than this fraction of their p_T .

1698 5.3.2 ELECTRONS

1699 Electrons are identified by matching reconstructed clusters in the electromagnetic calorimeter with tracks
1700 in the inner detector. The electrons are identified using a likelihood based method[14, 64] which takes
1701 into account the shower shapes in the calorimeter, the matching of tracks to clusters, and the amount of
1702 transition radiation in the TRT. The electrons are required to have $|\eta| < 2.47$, and candidates in the
1703 transition region between the barrel and endcap ($1.37 < |\eta| < 1.52$) are excluded. As the muons, the
1704 electrons are required to have transverse impact parameter significance < 3 , while in the longitudinal
1705 direction they must have $|z_0 \sin \theta| < 0.4$ mm. Some electron requirements also vary with electron E_T ,
1706 and these requirements are summarized in table 5.6.

1707 The isolation for electrons are defined similarly to the muons but with unique cuts on the objects in-
1708 cluded. The track-based isolation is defined using tracks with $p_T > 400$ MeV with cone sizes as defined
1709 previously. The calorimeter-based isolation also uses the same cone size as the muon, but here the cells
1710 within a 0.125×0.175 area in $\eta \times \phi$ around the electron cluster's barycenter are excluded. The other
1711 difference with respect to muons is that the denominator of the isolation ratio is the electron's E_T rather
1712 than p_T . The isolation cuts very with electron E_T and are defined in table 5.6.

1713 The electron is also required to not be consistent with a vertex coming from a photon conversion.

p_T range (GeV)	Quality cut	Calorimeter isolation	Track isolation
10 – 15	Very tight LH	0.20	0.06
15 – 20	Very tight LH	0.24	0.08
20 – 25	Very tight LH	0.28	0.10
> 25	Medium	0.28	0.10

Table 5.6: p_T dependent requirements for electrons. Electrons are required to have the amount of calorimeter or track based cone sums be less than this fraction of their E_T .

1714 5.3.3 JETS

1715 Jets are clustered with the anti- k_T reconstruction algorithm using a radius parameter of $R = 0.4$. They
 1716 are required to have a jet vertex fraction (JVF) of at least 50%, meaning that half of the tracks associated
 1717 with the jet originated from the primary vertex. Jets with no tracks associated (i.e. those outside the ac-
 1718 ceptance of the ID) do not have this requirement applied. Jets are required to have $p_T > 25$ GeV if
 1719 they are within the tracking acceptance ($|\eta| < 2.4$). Jets with $2.4 < |\eta| < 4.5$ are required to have
 1720 $p_T > 30$ GeV. This tighter requirement reduces jets from pileup in the region where JVF requirements
 1721 cannot be applied. The two highest p_T jets in the event are referred to as the “VBF” jets and used to com-
 1722 pute various analysis selections later.

1723 Identification of b -jets is done using the MV1 algorithm and is limited to the acceptance of the ID
 1724 ($|\eta| < 2.5$). The operating point of MV1 that is used is the one that is 85% efficient for identifying true
 1725 b -jets. This operating point has a 10.3% of mis-tagging a light quark jet as a b -jet. In order to improve
 1726 the rejection of b -jets, a lower threshold than the nominal p_T threshold described above is used. For the
 1727 purposes of counting the number of b -jets, jets with p_T down to 20 GeV are used.

1728 5.3.4 OVERLAP REMOVAL

1729 There are some cases where certain reconstructed objects will overlap and one will have to be chosen
 1730 (for example, an electron and a jet in the calorimeter). First, the case of lepton overlap is dealt with. If
 1731 an electron candidate extends into the muon spectrometer, it is removed. If a muon or electron have a
 1732 $\Delta R < 0.1$, the electron is removed and the muon is kept. If two electron candidates overlap within
 1733 the same radius, then the higher E_T electron is kept. Next, the overlap between leptons and jets is con-

1734 sidered. If an electron and jet are within $\Delta R < 0.3$ of one another, the electron is kept and the jet is
1735 removed. However, if a muon and jet overlap within $\Delta R < 0.3$, the jet is kept (as it is likely that the
1736 muon is the result of a semileptonic decay inside the jet).

1737 Once the overlap removal is complete, the final set of objects used in the analysis is defined.

1738 5.4 ANALYSIS SELECTION

1739 The VBF analysis uses two distinct selections. The first is a more standard selection, referred to as “cut-
1740 based”, that applies requirements on the VBF variables and uses m_T as the final discriminating variable.
1741 The second is a looser selection that uses a Boosted Decision Tree (BDT) score as the final discriminator
1742 in order to take advantage of the detailed correlations between the VBF variables. While the BDT analy-
1743 sis is ultimately more sensitive, the cut-based serves as an important component of the analysis. First, the
1744 cut-based allows for confirming the modeling and validity of many variables used as input to the BDT.
1745 Second, because this is the first use of such an MVA technique in the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ analysis, the cut-based
1746 selection allows confirmation of the final BDT result with a more traditional analysis. The cut-based
1747 techniques are the focus of this chapter, but connections to the BDT result will be illustrated when ap-
1748 propriate.

1749 One important note is that because this analysis is dedicated to the measurement of the VBF pro-
1750 duction mode of the Higgs, events coming from gluon fusion production with the Higgs decaying via
1751 $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ are treated as background events. This will be seen throughout the various
1752 predictions shown.

1753 5.4.1 COMMON PRE-SELECTION

1754 Both the cut-based and BDT analyses have a common pre-selection that is applied before the main signal
1755 region requirements. The requirements on leptons are common to all n_j bins. The analysis requires two
1756 oppositely charged leptons, with the leading lepton required to have $p_T > 22$ GeV while the subleading
1757 lepton must have $p_T > 10$ GeV. Next, to remove low mass Z/γ^* events, a cut on the dilepton mass
1758 $m_{\ell\ell} > 10$ (12) GeV is applied in the different (same) flavor channel. In the same flavor channels, there is

1759 an additional veto placed on the region around the Z peak, requiring that $|m_{\ell\ell} - m_Z| > 15$ GeV.

1760 There are also requirements on the amount of missing transverse momentum in the event. These
1761 are only applied in the same flavor channels, as in the different flavor channels $t\bar{t}$ is the dominant back-
1762 ground in $n_j \geq 2$. The BDT analysis requires $p_T^{\text{miss}} > 40$ GeV and $E_T^{\text{miss}} > 45$ GeV. The cut-
1763 based analysis must select more tightly on these variables to have maximal sensitivity and thus requires
1764 $p_T^{\text{miss}} > 50$ GeV and $E_T^{\text{miss}} > 55$ GeV.

1765 Finally, because this analysis is focused on VBF, a requirement on the jet multiplicity is placed, with
1766 $n_j \geq 2$. Additionally, the analysis requires that there are no jets identified as b-quarks in the event, or
1767 $n_b = 0$.

1768 5.4.2 CUT-BASED SELECTION

1769 The cut-based selection places sequential requirements on variables reconstructed from the VBF jets in
1770 order to increase the signal to background ratio.

1771 GENERAL BACKGROUND REDUCTION

1772 Top pair production is the primary background in the $n_j \geq 2$ bin. Even though $n_b = 0$ is required,
1773 an additional variable is constructed to further suppress the top background. There is often additional
1774 QCD radiation that accompanies the $t\bar{t}$ system when it is produced. Therefore, a variable which tests for
1775 the presence of this additional radiation, p_T^{sum} , is constructed. It is defined in equation 5.1.

$$p_T^{\text{sum}} = p_T^{\ell\ell} + p_T^{\text{miss}} + \sum p_T^j \quad (5.1)$$

1776 The first cut after pre-selection in the cut-based analysis requires $p_T^{\text{sum}} < 15$ GeV to further suppress
1777 $t\bar{t}$ production.

1778 In the different flavor channels, a cut is made to reduce the contamination from $Z \rightarrow \tau\tau$ decays. The
1779 di- τ invariant mass, $m_{\tau\tau}$, is constructed by assuming that the neutrinos from the τ decays were collinear
1780 with the leptons[?]. The analysis requires that this mass not be consistent with a Z by requiring $m_{\tau\tau} <$
1781 $m_Z - 25$ GeV.

1782 VBF TOPOLOGICAL CUTS

1783 The characteristic feature of VBF production of the Higgs is the presence of two additional forward jets
1784 coming from the incoming partons which radiate the vector bosons that make the Higgs. These jets are
1785 forward because the outgoing partons still carry the longitudinal momentum of the incoming partons.
1786 Figure 5.2 shows the distribution of the η for the leading jet in a VBF event compared to a background
1787 top pair production event. As can be seen, the VBF jets tend to be more forward in η , while the $t\bar{t}$ jets are
1788 more central.

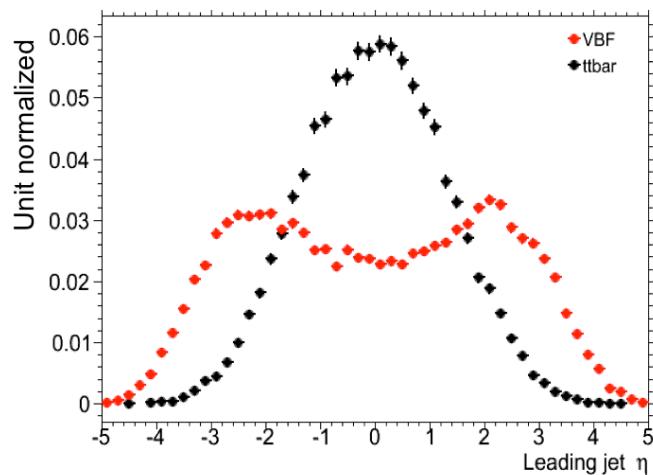


Figure 5.2: Leading jet η in VBF $H \rightarrow WW^*$ (red) and $t\bar{t}$ (black)

1789 Because the cross section for VBF production is an order of magnitude smaller than gluon fusion pro-
1790 duction, these forward jets must be used in order to better reduce background and achieve a good signal
1791 to background ratio. The dedicated VBF search selection requirements are constructed to maximally
1792 exploit the features of the unique VBF topology.

1793 Requirements on the VBF jets are collectively referred to as the “VBF topological cuts”. First, a re-
1794 quirement on the dijet invariant mass of the VBF jets, m_{jj} , is placed, requiring $m_{jj} > 600$ GeV. Next,
1795 the event is required to have a large gap in rapidity between the two VBF jets, or $\Delta y_{jj} > 3.6$. Both
1796 of these cuts put tight requirements on the presence of two forward, high p_T jets moving in opposite

1797 directions in the longitudinal plane.

1798 Beyond requiring the presence of the two forward VBF jets, the analysis also vetoes on the presence
1799 of any additional jets that fall between the two VBF jets. This cut is referred to as the central jet veto, or
1800 CJV. Any events with a third jet with $p_T > 20$ GeV whose rapidity is between the region defined by the
1801 two VBF jets are vetoed. This can be expressed in terms of a variable called the jet centrality, defined in
1802 equation 5.2.

$$C_{j3} = \left| \eta_{j3} - \frac{\eta_{j1} + \eta_{j2}}{2} \right| / \frac{|\eta_{j1} - \eta_{j2}|}{2}, \quad (5.2)$$

1803 Here, η_{j1} and η_{j2} are the pseudorapidities of the leading and subleading jets, respectively, while η_{j3} is
1804 the pseudorapidity of the extra jet in the event (if one exists). Intuitively, C_{j3} is zero when η_{j3} is directly
1805 centered between the two jets and unity when η_{j3} is aligned with either of the VBF jets. Thus, the CJV
1806 can be expressed as a requirement that $C_{j3} > 1$.

1807 The decay products of the Higgs tend to be central as well. Thus, the analysis also requires that both
1808 leptons in the analysis fall within the rapidity gap defined by the jets. This cut is referred to as the outside
1809 lepton veto, or OLV. A quantitative way to define the cut is to require that the centrality of each lepton
1810 (defined analogously to that of the third jet in equation 5.2) correspond to the lepton being within the jet
1811 rapidity gap, or $C_\ell < 1$ for both leptons.

1812 Figure 5.3a-c shows the m_{jj} , Δy_{jj} , and $C_{\ell 1}$ variables at the stage where all previous cuts in the se-
1813 quence have been made. The agreement between data and Monte Carlo is good, and the bottom panels
1814 show their power in discriminating the VBF signal from the background processes.

1815 The final signal region is also split into two bins of m_{jj} , with the first bin corresponding to $600 \text{ GeV} <$
1816 $m_{jj} < 1 \text{ TeV}$ and the second bin corresponding to $m_{jj} > 1 \text{ TeV}$. The first bin has more statistics but
1817 also a larger contribution from background, while the second bin has lower statistics but a 1:1 signal to
1818 background ratio.

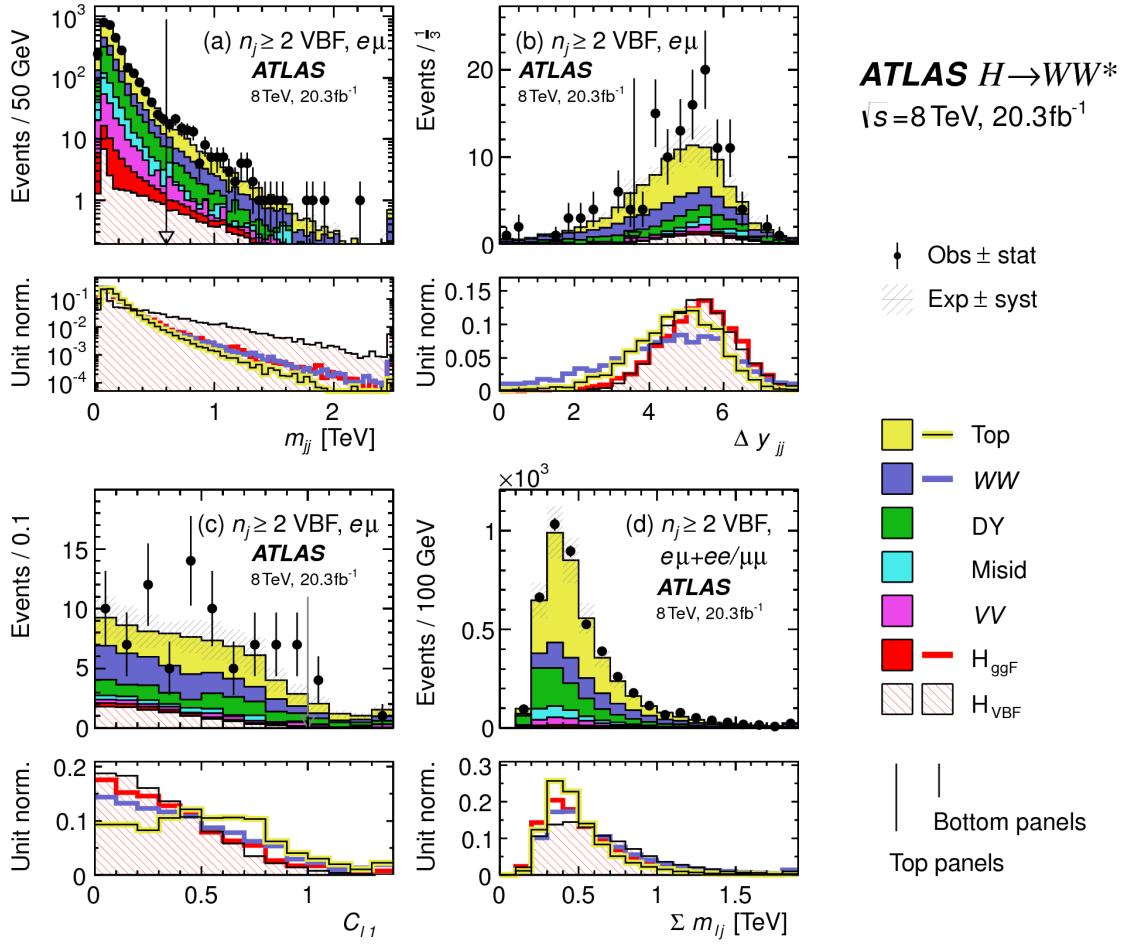


Figure 5.3: Distributions of (a) m_{jj} , (b) Δy_{jj} , (c) $C_{\ell 1}$, and (d) $\sum m_{ij}$, for the VBF analysis. The top panels compare simulation and data, while the bottom panels show normalized distributions for all background processes and signal[21].

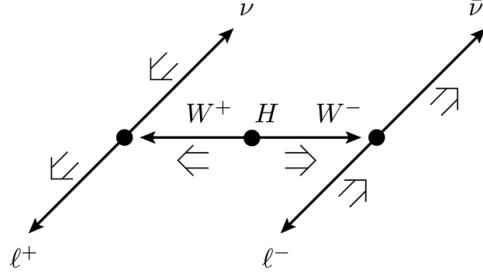


Figure 5.4: A cartoon of the WW final state. Momenta are represented with thin arrows, spins with thick arrows. [21]

1819 **HIGGS TOPOLOGICAL CUTS**

1820 The final state leptons will exhibit unique correlations due to the fact that they are arising from the decay
1821 of a spin zero resonance. In particular, the spins of the final state leptons and neutrinos must all cancel,
1822 as shown in figure 5.4. Because the neutrino has a left handed chirality and the anti-neutrino has a right
1823 handed chirality (in the massless neutrino approximation), the spin and momentum of the particles
1824 will be anti-aligned and aligned, respectively. In the transverse plane, the momenta of all four final state
1825 objects must cancel as well. With the constraint of having both the momenta and the spin alignments
1826 cancel, the final state kinematics strongly prefer having a small angle between the leptons in the trans-
1827 verse plane (low $\Delta\phi_{\ell\ell}$). This angular correlation will also lead to low values of the di-lepton invariant
1828 mass $m_{\ell\ell}$. These unique signal final state kinematic correlations will be exploited to define the ultimate
1829 signal region.

1830 The analysis places additional requirements on the final state leptons. Two requirements on dilepton
1831 kinematics are made that are common with lower multiplicity jet bins as well. The angle between leptons
1832 in the transverse plane, $\Delta\phi_{\ell\ell}$, is required to be less than 1.8 radians. Additionally, the dilepton mass $m_{\ell\ell}$
1833 is required to be less than 50 GeV.

1834 The cut-based analysis uses m_T as the final discriminating variable as in the ggF focused analysis. The
1835 optimal number of bins in m_T was found to be three bins, with the bin boundaries at 80 and 130 GeV.

1836 Table 5.7 shows the data and estimated signal and background yields from simulation as each cut de-
1837 scribed above is made. The table shows how each cut reduces specific backgrounds and how the overall

1838 signal to background ratio grows through the cutflow.

1839 Figure 5.5 shows an ATLAS event display of a candidate event in the final signal region.

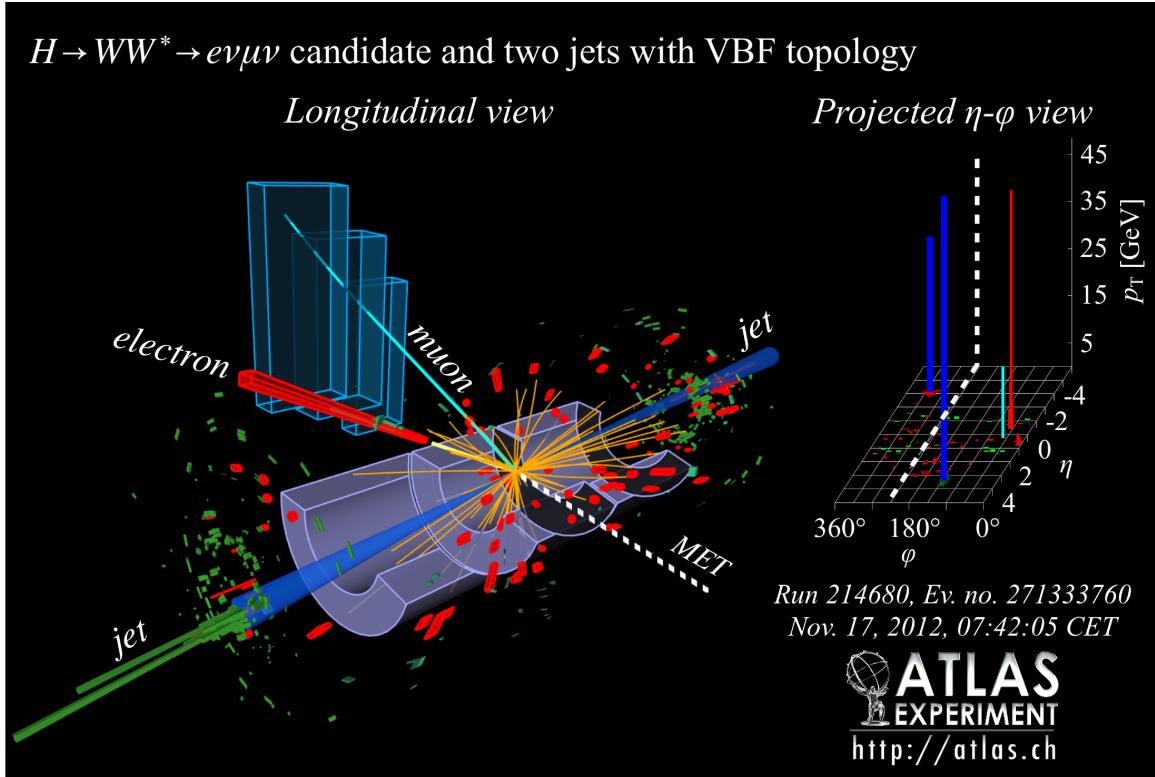


Figure 5.5: Event display of a VBF candidate event[21].

1840 5.4.3 BDT-BASED SELECTION

1841 The boosted decision tree based analysis takes a different philosophy compared to the cut-based. Rather
1842 than cutting sequentially on many variables, the BDT analysis uses many of these variables as inputs
1843 to the BDT and the output BDT score (O_{BDT}) as the final discriminant. The BDT is trained with the
1844 VBF $H \rightarrow WW^*$ simulation as the signal samples and all other processes as background, including ggF
1845 $H \rightarrow WW^*$ production. While the BDT based analysis is treated as a separate result, it has significant
1846 overlap with the cut-based selection.

Table 5.7: Event selection for the $n_j \geq 2$ VBF analysis in the 8 TeV cut-based analysis[21].

Selection	Summary										Composition of N_{bkg}							
	$N_{\text{obs}}/N_{\text{bkg}}$	N_{obs}	N_{bkg}	N_{signal}	N_{ggF}	N_{VBF}	N_{VH}	N_{WW}^{QCD}	N_{WW}^{EW}	$N_{t\bar{t}}$	N_t	N_{top}	N_{Wj}	N_{jj}	N_{VV}	N_{misid}	$N_{\text{Drell-Yan}}$	$N_{ee/\mu\mu} N_{\tau\tau}^{\text{QCD}}$
$e\mu$ sample	1.00 ± 0.00	61434	61180	85	32	26	1350	68	51810	2970	847	308	380	51	3260	46		
$n_b = 0$	1.02 ± 0.01	7818	7700	63	26	16	993	43	3000	367	313	193	273	35	2400	29		
$p_T^{\text{sum}} < 15$	1.03 ± 0.01	5787	5630	46	23	13	781	38	1910	270	216	107	201	27	2010	23		
$m_{\tau\tau} < m_Z - 25$	1.05 ± 0.02	3129	2970	40	20	9.9	484	22	1270	177	141	66	132	7.6	627	5.8		
$m_{jj} > 600$	1.31 ± 0.12	131	100	2.3	8.2	—	18	8.9	40	5.3	1.8	2.4	5.1	0.1	15	1.0		
$\Delta y_{jj} > 3.6$	1.33 ± 0.13	107	80	2.1	7.9	—	11.7	6.9	35	5.0	1.6	2.3	3.3	—	11.6	0.8		
$C_{j3} > 1$	1.36 ± 0.18	58	43	1.3	6.6	—	6.9	5.6	14	3.0	1.3	1.3	2.0	—	6.8	0.6		
$C_{\ell 1} < 1, C_{\ell 2} < 1$	1.42 ± 0.20	51	36	1.2	6.4	—	5.9	5.2	10.8	2.5	1.3	1.3	1.6	—	5.7	0.6		
$m_{\ell\ell}, \Delta\phi_{\ell\ell}, m_\tau$	2.53 ± 0.71	14	5.5	0.8	4.7	—	1.0	0.5	1.1	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.6	—	0.5	0.2		
<hr/>																		
$ee/\mu\mu$ sample	0.99 ± 0.01	26949	27190	31	14	10.1	594	37	23440	1320	230	8.6	137	690	679	16		
$n_b, p_T^{\text{sum}}, m_{\tau\tau}$	1.03 ± 0.03	1344	1310	13	8.0	4.0	229	12.0	633	86	26	0.9	45	187	76	1.5		
$m_{jj}, \Delta y_{jj}, C_{j3}, C_\ell$	1.39 ± 0.28	26	19	0.4	2.9	0.0	3.1	3.1	5.5	1.0	0.2	0.0	0.7	3.8	0.7	0.1		
$m_{\ell\ell}, \Delta\phi_{\ell\ell}, m_\tau$	1.63 ± 0.69	6	3.7	0.3	2.2	0.0	0.4	0.2	0.6	0.2	0.2	0.0	0.1	1.5	0.3	0.1		

1847 PRE-TRAINING SELECTION AND BDT INPUTS

1848 Before training, the common preselection cuts described in section 5.4.1 are applied. Additionally, the
1849 central jet veto and outside lepton veto described in section 5.4.2 are applied. The BDT has eight input
1850 variables, six of which are also variables that are used in the cut-based analysis. The six shared variables
1851 are p_T^{sum} , m_{jj} , Δy_{jj} , $m_{\ell\ell}$, $\Delta\phi_{\ell\ell}$, and m_T . The seventh variable input in the BDT is a combination of
1852 the variables used to do the OLV in the cut-based analysis. The BDT uses as input the sum of lepton
1853 centralities, or $\sum C_\ell = C_{\ell 1} + C_{\ell 2}$. The final BDT input variable, $\Sigma m_{\ell j}$, is constructed to account for
1854 the correlations between the jets and leptons in the event. It is the sum of the invariant masses of all four
1855 possible lepton-jet combinations.

1856 Figure 5.3d shows the agreement between data and simulation for the $\Sigma m_{\ell j}$ variable, as well as show-
1857 ing its discriminating power. Figure 5.6 shows the distributions of the Higgs topological variables that
1858 are shared between the cut-based and BDT analyses. Figure 5.7 shows the distributions of the VBF topo-
1859 logical variables shared between the cut-based and BDT analyses. In both cases, the VBF yield has been
1860 scaled by a factor of 50 to better show the shape difference compared to the backgrounds.

1861 Table ?? summarizes the cuts applied for the cut-based and analyses, as well as which variables are used
1862 as input to the BDT.

1863 5.5 BACKGROUND ESTIMATION

1864 This section describes the procedures used to estimate backgrounds for the VBF analysis in both the
1865 cut-based and BDT analyses.

1866 5.5.1 GENERAL STRATEGY

1867 Most of the backgrounds in the VBF analysis have shapes estimated from Monte Carlo simulation but
1868 normalizations derived from control regions in data. In essence, a normalization factor (denoted with
1869 β or abbreviated as NF) is derived by scaling the MC yield in the control region to the corresponding
1870 yield in data. Once this factor is derived, it can be used to scale the MC estimate of the background in the

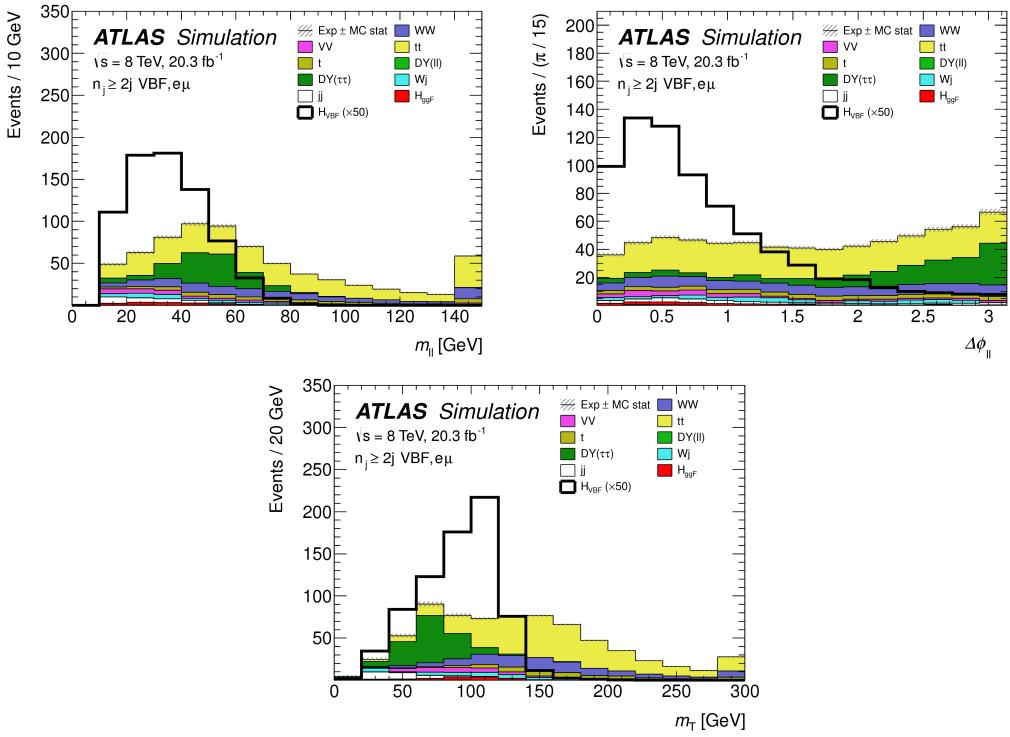


Figure 5.6: Distributions of $m_{\ell\ell}$ (top left), $\Delta\phi_{\ell\ell}$ (top right), and m_T (bottom), Higgs topology variables used in the selection requirements of the cut-based signal region and as inputs to the BDT result. These are plotted after all of the BDT pre-training selection cuts[21].

1871 signal region. This is illustrated in equation 5.3.

$$B_{\text{SR}}^{\text{est}} = B_{\text{SR}} \times \frac{N_{\text{CR}}}{B_{\text{CR}}} \equiv B_{\text{SR}} \times \beta \quad (5.3)$$

1872 Here, B denotes the MC yield prediction in the denoted region, while N denotes the observed num-
1873 ber of events in data in the denoted region.

1874 Another way of writing the same equation, in terms of an extrapolation factor α rather than a nor-
1875 malization factor β . The overall calculation is exactly the same. However, when phrased in this way, it
1876 shows how the uncertainty on the background estimation can be reduced. This is shown in equation 5.4.

$$B_{\text{SR}}^{\text{est}} = N_{\text{CR}} \times \frac{B_{\text{SR}}}{B_{\text{CR}}} \equiv N_{\text{CR}} \times \alpha \quad (5.4)$$

1877 Phrased this way, the equation shows that with enough statistics in the control region, a large theoret-

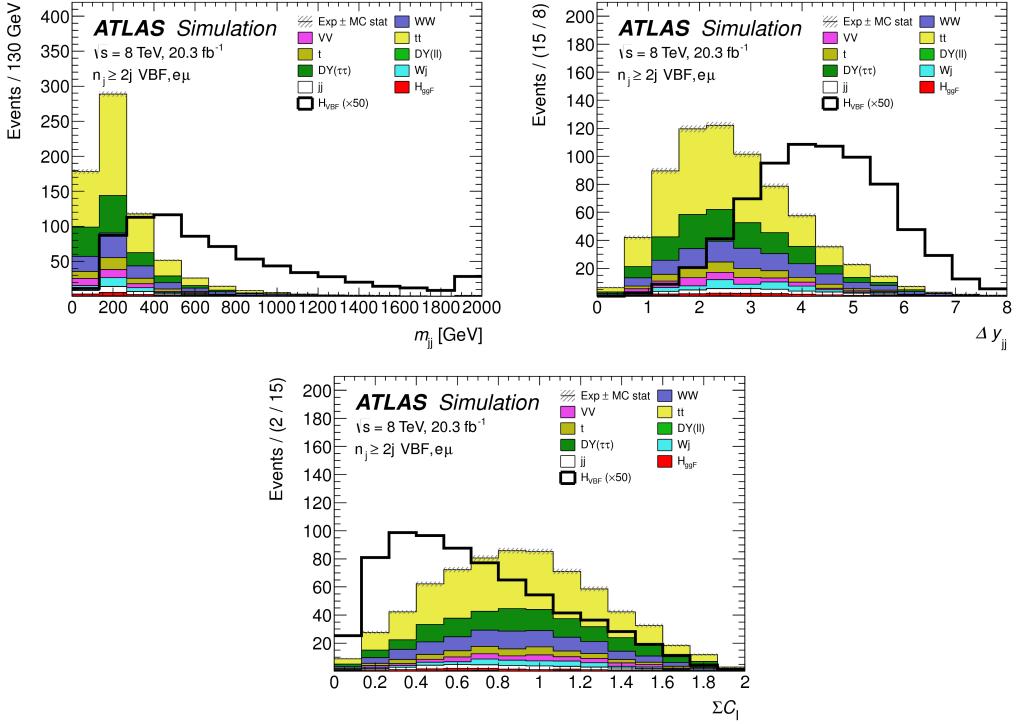


Figure 5.7: Distributions of m_{jj} (top left), Δy_{jj} (top right), $\sum C_l$ (bottom), VBF topology variables used in the selection requirements of the cut-based signal region and as inputs to the BDT result. These are plotted after all of the BDT pre-training selection cuts[21].

ical uncertainty on the overall background yield in the signal region can be replaced by a small statistical uncertainty coming from the number of data events in the CR and a smaller theoretical uncertainty on the extrapolation from the control region to the signal region.

5.5.2 TOP BACKGROUND

The normalization factor β_t for the top background in the VBF analysis is derived in a region required to have one b-tagged jet, or $n_b = 1$. In the cut-based analysis, normalization factors are computed at every stage of the cutflow by applying the appropriate cuts in the CR. These NF are then applied to the $t\bar{t}$ and single top event yields in the SR. In the BDT analysis, a single normalization factor is computed for each bin of O_{BDT} after applying the BDT pre-training cuts described previously. The computed normalization factors are derived with all flavor combinations combined in order to decrease statistical uncertainty. Additionally, in the BDT analysis, BDT bins 2 and 3 are merged for the same reason.

1889 Table 5.8 shows the evolution of the β_t through the cut-based selection. Table 5.9 shows the value
 1890 of the β_t in each bin of O_{BDT} . In all cases, the computed factors are relatively consistent with unity,
 1891 with the largest discrepancy coming in bin 1 of O_{BDT} . The normalization factors in the bins of O_{BDT}
 1892 are also consistent with those derived in the cut-based signal region, increasing confidence in the BDT
 1893 estimation.

Cut	β_t
$p_T^{\text{sum}} < 15 \text{ GeV}$	1.03 ± 0.01
$m_{\tau\tau} < m_Z - 25$	1.05 ± 0.01
$m_{jj} > 600 \text{ GeV}$	0.96 ± 0.06
$\Delta y_{jj} > 3.6$	1.02 ± 0.08
CJV	1.13 ± 0.16
OLV	1.01 ± 0.19
$m_{jj} < 1 \text{ TeV}$	0.94 ± 0.19
$m_{jj} > 1 \text{ TeV}$	1.48 ± 0.66

Table 5.8: Top normalization factors computed at each stage of the cut-based selection. Uncertainties are statistical only.

O_{BDT}	β_t
Bin0	1.09 ± 0.02
Bin1	1.58 ± 0.15
Bin2	0.95 ± 0.31
Bin3	0.95 ± 0.31

Table 5.9: Top normalization factors computed for each bin of O_{BDT} . Uncertainties are statistical only.

1894 Figure 5.8 shows the m_{jj} and O_{BDT} distributions in the top control region. Overall the modeling
 1895 looks consistent with the data.

1896 While these normalization factors can be computed and applied to the expected background yields
 1897 listed in tables like table 5.7, in the end the normalization of the top background is profiled (meaning
 1898 there is a dedicated Poisson constraint) and allowed to float in the final statistical fit.

1899 5.5.3 $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau$ BACKGROUND

1900 In the different flavor channels, the $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau$ background is an important one. Di-tau production
 1901 can produce an $e\mu$ final state if each τ lepton decays to a different flavor lepton.

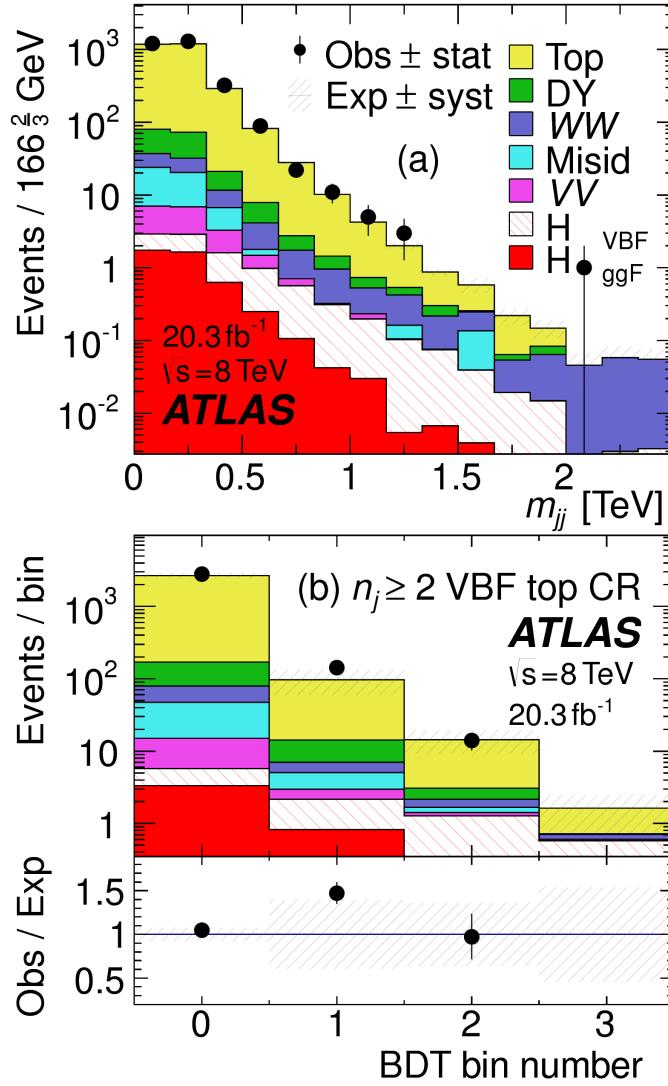


Figure 5.8: Distributions of m_{jj} (a) and O_{BDT} (b) in the VBF $n_b = 1$ top CR [21].

In the BDT analysis, a single normalization factor for the background is derived. A control region is defined using the pre-training selection cuts, except requiring that $|m_{\tau\tau} - m_Z| < 25 \text{ GeV}$ so that the region is enriched in $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau$ background. Additional requirements of $m_{\ell\ell} < 80(75) \text{ GeV}$ in the different (same) flavor channel, as well as $O_{\text{BDT}} > -0.48$ are applied to increase the purity of the region. The final $\beta_{Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau}$ is calculated to be 0.9 ± 0.3 (statistical uncertainty only). Because of the small contribution of this background in the BDT analysis and the large statistical uncertainty, no additional systematics are calculated. The final SR estimate is scaled by this β and not allowed to float in

1909 the fit.

1910 The cut-based corrections are a bit more involved because they need to be applied cut by cut through
1911 the cutflow, as well as in the final signal region for the fit. The region is defined including all SR cuts
1912 up to the $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau$ veto, which is instead made into a Z mass peak requirement as for the BDT
1913 region. The $m_{\ell\ell}$ cut from the BDT region is included as well. The cut-based approach aims to correct
1914 the normalization of the $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau$ background in two ways. First, an overall normalization factor is
1915 computed from the control region. However, the VBF topological cuts are not included in this region,
1916 and applying them as is done in the top CR is not feasible due to limited statistics. So, instead, correction
1917 factors (CF) to the cut efficiencies of the VBF cuts are derived in a same flavor $Z \rightarrow \ell\ell$ control region,
1918 which has significantly more statistics. The CF is simply the ratio of the cut efficiencies in data and MC
1919 derived in this region. In the end, the overall background estimate is given by equation 5.5.

$$N_{Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau}^{\text{est}} = B_{Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau}^{\text{SR}} \times \beta_{\tau\tau} \times \frac{\epsilon_{\text{VBF cuts}}^{\text{data}}}{\epsilon_{\text{VBF cuts}}^{\text{MC}}} \quad (5.5)$$

1920 The hypothesis is that while the normalization correction must be derived in a dedicated region, the
1921 efficiency of the VBF cuts should not be sensitive to the type of Z/γ^* process and thus the larger control
1922 region can be exploited to derive the CF. Figure 5.9 shows a shape comparison for the m_{jj} variable in
1923 $Z \rightarrow \tau\tau$ events in the signal region and $Z \rightarrow \ell\ell$ events in the control region. The figure shows that the
1924 shapes are indeed comparable and thus any CF derived in the same flavor control region can reliably be
1925 applied in the signal region.

1926 Table 5.10 shows the overall normalization factor $\beta_{\tau\tau}$ and the efficiency correction factors for the var-
1927 ious VBF topological cuts. In general, the statistical uncertainties on the cut efficiency corrections are
1928 quite good, and the MC tends to underestimate the efficiency of the VBF cuts for the $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau$ back-
1929 ground. The overall normalization factor is also consistent with that calculated for the BDT analysis.

1930 5.5.4 $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell$ BACKGROUND

1931 In the same flavor channels, the $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell$ background is dominant and thus must be estimated
1932 correctly. In both the BDT and cut-based analyses, the background is estimated using the so-called

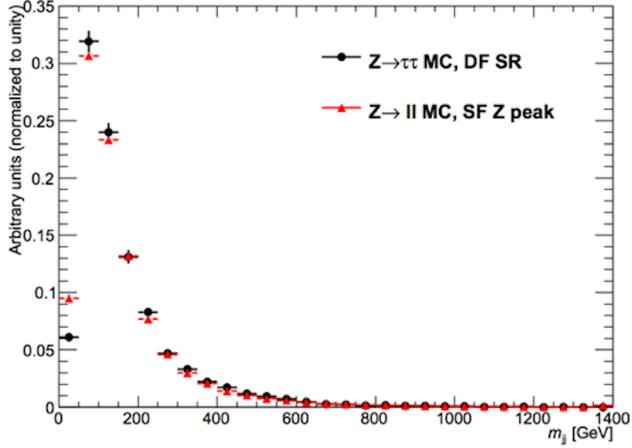


Figure 5.9: Comparison of m_{jj} shape in a same flavor $Z \rightarrow \ell\ell$ control region and the VBF cut-based signal region.

$\beta_{\tau\tau}$	0.97 ± 0.04
Cut	Correction factors
$m_{jj} > 600 \text{ GeV}$	1.09 ± 0.01
$\Delta y_{jj} > 3.6$	1.14 ± 0.02
CJV	1.20 ± 0.02
OLV	1.17 ± 0.03
$m_{jj} < 1 \text{ TeV}$	1.17 ± 0.06
$m_{jj} > 1 \text{ TeV}$	1.18 ± 0.13

Table 5.10: $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau$ correction factors for the VBF cut-based analysis. Uncertainties are statistical only.

“ABCD” method. The ABCD method creates four different regions by defining cuts on two variables. One of the regions (A) is the signal region, while the other regions are defined by inverting one of both of the cuts. in this case, the two variables used are $m_{\ell\ell}$ and E_T^{miss} , because inverting either of the SR cuts on these variables will give regions rich in the $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell$ background. Figure 5.10 illustrates the general strategy for each region.

In both of the cut-based and BDT analyses, the Z peak region is defined with $|m_{\ell\ell} - m_Z| < 15 \text{ GeV}$. In the cut-based analysis, low $m_{\ell\ell}$ corresponds to $m_{\ell\ell} < 50 \text{ GeV}$ (this defines the cut-based SR) while in the BDT it is $m_{\ell\ell} < 75 \text{ GeV}$. In the cut-based, high and low E_T^{miss} are defined as opposite ends of the 55 GeV cut applied for the signal region definition. The BDT low E_T^{miss} region is between 25 and 45 GeV, while the high E_T^{miss} region is $E_T^{\text{miss}} > 45 \text{ GeV}$.

Once the regions are defined, the final signal region background estimate is done by taking the esti-

Region A (SR)	Region C
High E_T^{miss}	High E_T^{miss}
Low $m_{\ell\ell}$	Z peak
Region B	Region D
Low E_T^{miss}	Low E_T^{miss}
Low $m_{\ell\ell}$	Z peak

Figure 5.10: General illustration of the ABCD region definitions for $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell$ background estimation.

1944 mate in region B and extrapolating it to the signal region (A) by multiplying it by the ratio of regions
 1945 C and D. Effectively, the Z peak region is used to estimate the efficiency of the E_T^{miss} cut in data, and
 1946 then this efficiency is applied in the low $m_{\ell\ell}$ region. An additional correction is also applied for the non-
 1947 closure of the method in MC. This is summarized in equations 5.6 and 5.7.

$$N_{Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell}^{\text{SR}} = N_{Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell}^{\text{B}} \times \frac{N_{Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell}^{\text{C}}}{N_{Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell}^{\text{D}}} \times f_{\text{corr}} \quad (5.6)$$

$$f_{\text{corr}} = \frac{B_{\text{MC}}^{\text{A}}/B_{\text{MC}}^{\text{B}}}{B_{\text{MC}}^{\text{C}}/B_{\text{MC}}^{\text{D}}} \quad (5.7)$$

1948 Here, the N refer to data yields in each region with the non Z/γ^* backgrounds subtracted, while B
 1949 refer to the Z/γ^* yields in MC in each region.

1950 A normalization factor $\beta_{\ell\ell}$ is computed for each analysis as the ratio of the predicted data yield to
 1951 the MC yield in the SR. The shape of the BDT distribution is taken from data region B, while the shape
 1952 of the m_T distribution in the cut-based analysis is taken from Z/γ^* MC in the SR. The values of the
 1953 $\beta_{\ell\ell}$ in the cut-based and BDT analyses from this method are summarized in table 5.11. They are quite
 1954 consistent with one another within the statistical uncertainties. In the cut-based analysis, the same cut
 1955 efficiency correction factors shown in table 5.10 are also applied (in product with the $\beta_{\ell\ell}$) in the same
 1956 flavor channels to this background, as they were derived in the Z peak region.

	β_t
BDT Bin 1	1.01 ± 0.15
BDT Bin 2	0.89 ± 0.28
Cut-based	0.81 ± 0.21

Table 5.11: $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell$ normalization factors for cut-based and BDT analyses. Uncertainties are statistical only.

1957 5.5.5 WW AND OTHER DIBOSON BACKGROUNDS

1958 The WW and other diboson backgrounds have both their shape and normalization taken from MC
 1959 simulation. They are validated in dedicated control regions and found to agree with data well.
 1960 As WW is the largest of these backgrounds and is irreducible, validating the estimate is of particular
 1961 importance. The validation region is constructed by requiring the pre-selection cuts on leptons and $m_{\ell\ell}$,
 1962 $n_b = 0$, and $m_T > 100$ GeV. The m_{T2} variable[?] is an additional discriminant that will isolate
 1963 the WW background, and a requirement of $m_{T2} > 160$ GeV is placed to define the WW validation
 1964 region. This cut gives a 60% purity for the validation region. The derived normalization factor in the
 1965 region is 1.15 ± 0.19 and is thus consistent with unity. Figure 5.11 shows the m_{T2} distribution and how
 1966 it distinguishes the WW background.

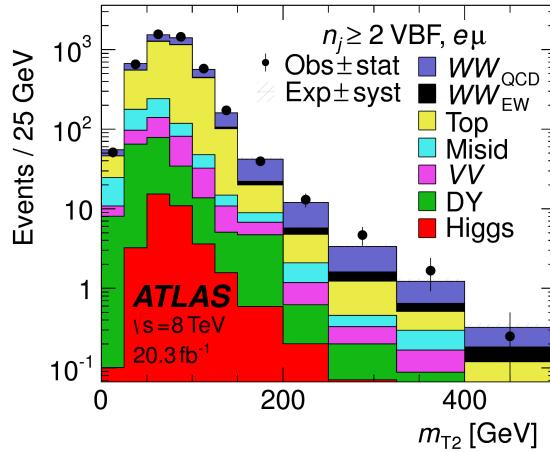


Figure 5.11: Distribution of m_{T2} in the WW validation region of the VBF analysis[21].

1967 5.5.6 HIGGS PRODUCTION VIA GLUON-GLUON FUSION

1968 Because this analysis is dedicated to measuring the VBF contribution to Higgs production, the com-
1969 ponent of Higgs production from gluon-gluon fusion is treated as a background. The shape is taken
1970 directly from simulation, using the generators described in table 5.4. In the final combined fit of all dif-
1971 ferent signal regions, the normalization is controlled by either a combined signal strength parameter μ ,
1972 which controls the normalization of both ggF and VBF production, or a separate parameter μ_{ggF} de-
1973 pending on the interpretation being presented in the final results.

1974 5.5.7 BACKGROUNDS WITH MISIDENTIFIED LEPTONS

1975 As discussed previously, the $W + \text{jets}$ and QCD multijet backgrounds are derived with fully data-driven
1976 methods. These backgrounds do not make a large contribution to the final VBF signal region but their
1977 estimation methods are discussed briefly here.

1978 $W + \text{jets}$ BACKGROUND

1979 The $W + \text{jets}$ background enters the signal region by having one of the jets mis-reconstructed as a lep-
1980 ton. The background is estimated by constructing a control sample with two leptons, where one lepton
1981 passes the usual lepton quality cuts but the second lepton fails one of those cuts (also known as the “anti-
1982 identified” lepton). This control region is rich in the $W + \text{jets}$ contribution because if a second lepton is
1983 reconstructed in a $W + \text{jets}$ event it is likely to be poor quality. The purity of this $W + \text{jets}$ control sample
1984 is 85% to 90% depending on the exact configuration of leptons in the final state.

1985 The signal region estimate of $W + \text{jets}$ is estimated by extrapolation from the control sample to the sig-
1986 nal region using extrapolation factors derived in a $Z + \text{jets}$ control sample in data. The extrapolation fac-
1987 tor is the ratio of the number of lepton candidates satisfying all quality criteria to the number of lepton
1988 candidates anti-identified. This ratio is measured in bins of p_T and η . Thus, the final signal region esti-
1989 mate (binned as the extrapolation factor is binned) is simply the number of events in the anti-identified
1990 lepton control sample multiplied by the extrapolation factor derived from the $Z + \text{jets}$ control sample.
1991 Figure 5.12 shows the extrapolation factors derived for electrons and muons.

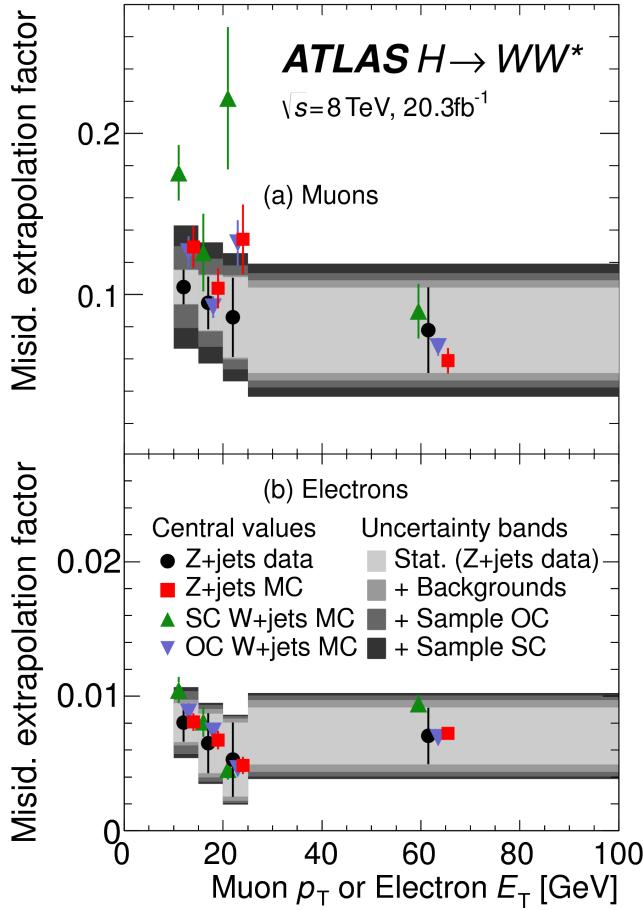


Figure 5.12: Extrapolation factors for the W +jets estimate derived for muons (a) and electrons (b) as a function of lepton p_T [21].

1992 QCD MULTIJET BACKGROUND

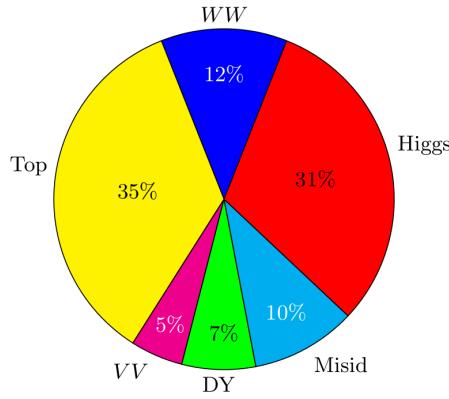
1993 The method for estimating the multijet background is very similar to the W +jets estimation method.
 1994 The control sample in this case has two anti-identified leptons but otherwise satisfies all signal region
 1995 requirements. The extrapolation factor is estimated from a multijet sample and applied twice to the
 1996 control sample.

1997 5.5.8 BACKGROUND COMPOSITION IN FINAL SIGNAL REGION

1998 After all of these estimation procedures, the final signal region composition can be calculated. The esti-
 1999 mated yields are all shown in table 5.7. Figure 5.13 shows the relative percentages of the different back-

ground for the different flavor and same flavor final states. In $e\mu$, the leading backgrounds are top backgrounds, ggF Higgs, and SM WW production. In $ee/\mu\mu$, the leading background is Drell-Yan, followed by top and ggF Higgs.

(a) $n_j \geq 2$ VBF, $e\mu$



(b) $n_j \geq 2$ VBF, $ee/\mu\mu$

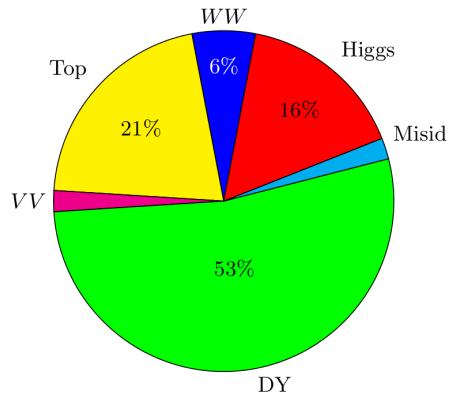


Figure 5.13: Background composition in final VBF signal region[21].

5.6 SYSTEMATIC UNCERTAINTIES

There are two main types of systematic uncertainties that are assessed for the analysis. First, theoretical uncertainties associated with the various signal and background yield estimates are discussed. Then, experimental uncertainties due to detector effects are shown. Normalization uncertainties refer to uncertainties that affect the cross section of the process in question in the signal region being probed. Shape uncertainties refer to systematic uncertainties that affect the shape of the final discriminating variable (either m_T or O_{BDT}).

5.6.1 THEORETICAL UNCERTAINTIES

There are four main components to theoretical uncertainties assigned to signal and background processes taken from Monte Carlo. Each one is a different source of variation in the overall acceptance for that process. The first involves variation of the QCD renormalization and factorization scales used in the calculation. In this case, the two scales are varied independently and simultaneously by factors of two high or low and quantifying the resulting variation in normalization and shape for the process. This

2016 approximates the correction to the cross section that would come from including the next order of the
 2017 QCD calculation (referred to as scale uncertainty). Next, there is an uncertainty associated with the PDF
 2018 set used in generating the events. The uncertainty eigenvectors for the given PDF set are studied, and the
 2019 envelope of maximal variation is taken as an uncertainty. Finally, there are two uncertainties associated
 2020 with the choice of MC software (referred to as PDF uncertainty). An uncertainty associated with the
 2021 generator chosen for the hard scattering process is evaluated by keeping the parton showering software
 2022 constant but varying the matrix element generator and taking the maximal variation as an uncertainty
 2023 (referred to as the generator uncertainty). The converse variation can also be done, where the matrix ele-
 2024 ment generator remains constant and the generator used for the underlying event/parton shower mod-
 2025 eling is varied (referred to as the UE/PS uncertainty). In cases where the background is normalized in a
 2026 control region, the systematic uncertainty arises from variations of the extrapolation factor α between
 2027 the CR and the SR, which can affect the normalization of the background in the SR.

2028 There are two additional uncertainties that are applied to the Higgs processes as well. First, there are
 2029 uncertainties assigned to the Higgs total production cross section. Then, there are uncertainties assigned
 2030 based on the fact that the analysis is done in exclusive jet bins and it is possible for signal events to mi-
 2031 grate from one bin to the next depending on the presence or absence of jets. These are assigned using the
 2032 Jet Veto Efficiency (JVE) procedure[?] for ggF events and the Stewart-Tackmann (ST) method[87] for
 2033 VBF production.

2034 Table 5.12 shows the total theory uncertainties on the backgrounds in the cut-based analysis. These are
 2035 the sum in quadrature of the uncertainties from each of the variations described above.

Process	Theory syst. (%)
ggF H	48
Top	26
QCD WW	37
$Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \tau\tau$	6.1

Table 5.12: Systematic uncertainties for various processes in the cut-based VBF analysis, given in units of % change in yield.
 Values are given for the low m_{jj} signal region.

2036 Figures 5.14 and 5.15 show the variations in the extrapolation factor from the PDF and QCD uncer-
 2037 tainties on the top background estimate, binned in m_T , for the cut-based analysis. In both cases, there

2038 was no significant shape uncertainty but normalization uncertainties were assigned according to the
 2039 maximal variation. These uncertainties enter into the 26% total uncertainty on top quoted in table 5.12.
 2040 While the estimate for the same-flavor $Z/\gamma^* \rightarrow \ell\ell$ background is data-driven, there is still a sys-
 2041 tematic uncertainty taken for the non-closure of the method in Monte Carlo. This is taken as the max-
 2042 imum of the deviation of the non-closure factor f_{corr} from unity and its uncertainty, or $\max(|1 -$
 2043 $f_{\text{corr}}|, \delta f_{\text{corr}})$. For the cut-based analysis this non-closure uncertainty 23%, while for the BDT analy-
 2044 sis it is 17%.

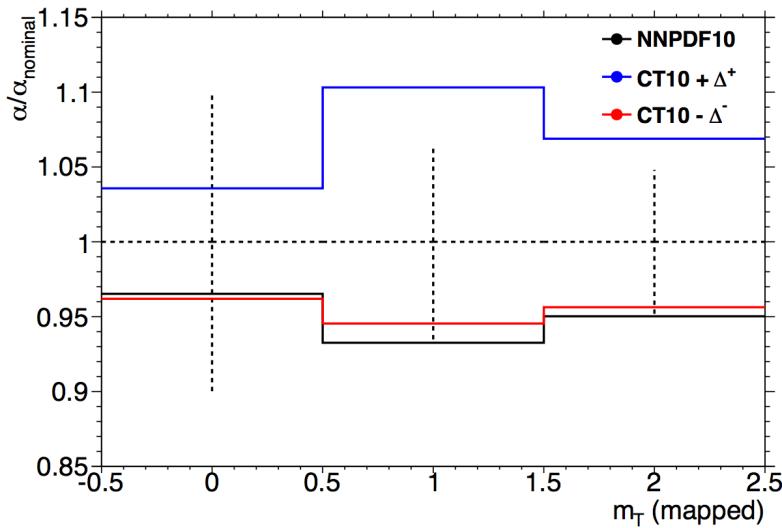


Figure 5.14: Variations in the top background extrapolation factor in the cut-based analysis due to PDF uncertainties, binned in m_T .

2045 5.6.2 EXPERIMENTAL UNCERTAINTIES

2046 In this analysis, the theoretical uncertainties end up being the most dominant, but there are some ex-
 2047 perimental uncertainties that make a contribution as well. The first is the uncertainty on the measured
 2048 integrated luminosity, which affects backgrounds whose normalization is taken from MC and is mea-
 2049 sured to be 2.8% in the 8 TeV dataset [88]. The dominant sources of uncertainty overall are uncertainties
 2050 on the jet energy scale and resolution and the b -tagging efficiency. Additional sources include lepton
 2051 uncertainties on identification, resolution, and trigger efficiency, as well as uncertainties on the missing
 2052 transverse momentum .

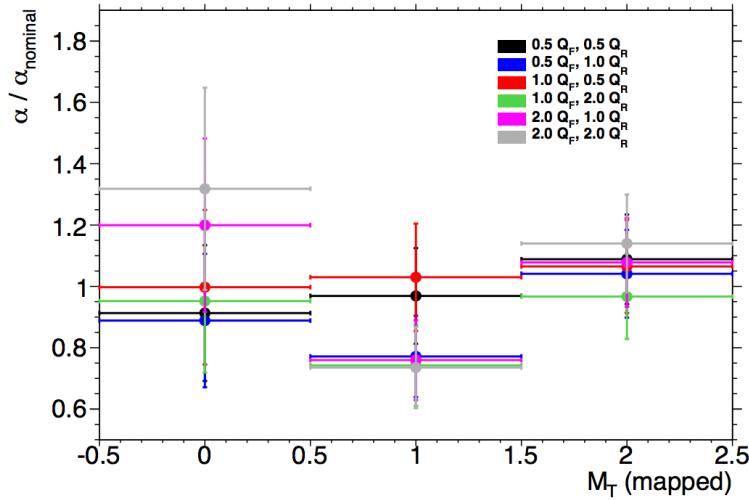


Figure 5.15: Variations in the top background extrapolation factor in the cut-based analysis due to QCD scale uncertainties, binned in m_T .

2053 The jet energy scale uncertainty is split into several independent components, including jet-flavor
 2054 dependent calorimeter response uncertainties, uncertainties on modeling of pile-up interactions, uncer-
 2055 tainties on extrapolation from the central to forward detector regions, and MC non-closure [89]. The
 2056 uncertainty on energy scale for jets used in this analysis ranges from 1% to 7% depending on the jet p_T
 2057 and η . The jet energy resolution varies from 5% to 20%, with uncertainties ranging from 2% to 40%
 2058 (the largest uncertainties occurring at the selection threshold).

2059 The b-tagging efficiency is independently measured in data samples enriched in dileptonic decays of
 2060 $t\bar{t}$ events or in events where a muon is reconstructed in the vicinity of a jet[90, 91]. The efficiencies and
 2061 their uncertainties are binned in p_T and decomposed into uncorrelated components using an eigenvec-
 2062 tor method[?]. Uncertainties on the efficiency range from 1% to 7.8%. The uncertainty on the rate of
 2063 misidentification of c -jets as b -jets ranges from 6-14%, while the uncertainty on the rate of light jet mis-
 2064 tagging ranges from 9-19% depending on p_T and η .

2065 The total experimental uncertainties on different signal and background components are summa-
 2066 rized in table 5.13. They are compared to the level of other statistical and systematic uncertainties as well.
 2067 Overall, the experimental uncertainties are sub-dominant compared to the statistical and theoretical
 2068 uncertainties.

Sample	Total error	Stat. error	Expt. syst. err.	Theo. syst. err.
$n_j \geq 2$ VBF-enriched				
N_{sig}	13	-	6.8	12
N_{bkg}	9.2	4.7	6.4	4.5
N_{WW}	32	-	14	28
N_{top}	15	9.6	7.6	8.5
N_{misid}	22	-	12	19
N_{VV}	20	-	12	15
$N_{\tau\tau} (\text{DY})$	40	25	31	2.9
$N_{ee/\mu\mu} (\text{DY})$	19	11	15	-

Table 5.13: Composition of the post-fit uncertainties (in %) on the total signal (N_{sig}), total background (N_{bkg}), and individual background yields in the VBF analysis[21].

2069 5.7 RESULTS

2070 While the combined results of all the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ sub-analyses will be discussed in the next chapter, this
 2071 section presents the results of the VBF specific analysis and interpretations.

2072 As table 5.7 shows, the final cut-based signal region contains 20 events in data with $m_T < 150$ GeV,
 2073 14 coming from the $e\mu$ channel and 6 coming from the $ee + \mu\mu$ channel. The BDT analysis has many
 2074 more candidates due to its looser selection, and the yields in each bin of O_{BDT} are shown in table 5.14.

2075 Figure 5.16(a) shows the final distribution of data candidates compared to the expected m_T distri-
 2076 bution for signal and background. The data are very consistent with a VBF Higgs hypothesis. Fig-
 2077 ure 5.16(b) shows where the data candidates fall in the two-dimensional binning of m_T and m_{jj} used
 2078 in the fit for the cut-based analysis.

2079 Figure 5.17 shows the distributions of O_{BDT} and m_T in the VBF BDT analysis. Again the data are
 2080 quite consistent with a VBF Higgs hypothesis.

2081 Because the cut-based result is used as a validation for the BDT analysis and the two signal regions are
 2082 not fully orthogonal, it is interesting to explore which events overlap between the two analyses. Of the
 2083 twenty events in the cut-based signal region, only seven were not selected by the BDT analysis, while the
 2084 other thirteen also enter the BDT signal region. Figure ?? shows where the different analysis candidates
 2085 lie in the m_{jj} - m_T plane. This shows clearly that the advantage of the BDT analysis is that it can extract

(a) Before the BDT classification

Selection	Summary						Composition of N_{bkg}											
	$N_{\text{obs}}/N_{\text{bkg}}$	N_{obs}	N_{bkg}	N_{signal}	N_{ggF}	N_{VBF}	N_{VH}	N_{WW}	$N_{\text{WW}}^{\text{NEW}}$	$N_{\text{WW}}^{\text{QCD}}$	N_t	N_{missid}	N_{Wj}	N_{ij}	N_{VV}	$N_{e\mu/\mu\mu}$	$N_{\tau\tau}^{\text{QCD}}$	$N_{\tau\tau}^{\text{NEW}}$
$e\mu$ sample	1.04 ± 0.04	718	689	13	15	2.0	90	II	327	42	29	23	31	—	2.2	130	2	
$ee/\mu\mu$ sample	1.18 ± 0.08	469	397	6.0	7.7	0.9	37	3	132	17	5.2	1.2	10.1	168	23	1		

(b) Bins in O_{BDT}

$e\mu$ sample	Bins in O_{BDT}																	
	Bin 0 (not used)	Bin 1	Bin 2	Bin 3	Bin 4	Bin 5	Bin 6	Bin 7	Bin 8	Bin 9	Bin 10	Bin 11	Bin 12	Bin 13	Bin 14	Bin 15	Bin 16	Bin 17
$ee/\mu\mu$ sample	1.91 ± 0.08	396	345	3.8	1.3	0.8	33	2	123	16	4.1	1.1	8.8	137	20.5	0.5		
Bin 0 (not used)	0.82 ± 0.14	53	45	1.5	2.2	0.1	3.0	0.5	10.4	1.8	0.8	0.2	0.9	26	1.7	0.1		
Bin 1	1.77 ± 0.49	14	7.9	0.6	2.5	—	0.8	0.3	1.1	0.2	0.2	—	0.3	4.4	0.3	0.1		
Bin 2	6.52 ± 2.87	6	0.9	0.2	1.7	—	0.1	0.2	0.2	—	—	—	—	0.7	—	—		
Bin 3																		

Table 5.14: Event selection for the VBF BDT analysis. The event yields in (a) are shown after the preselection and the additional requirements applied before the BDT classification (see text). The event yields in (b) are given in bins in O_{BDT} after the classification[21].

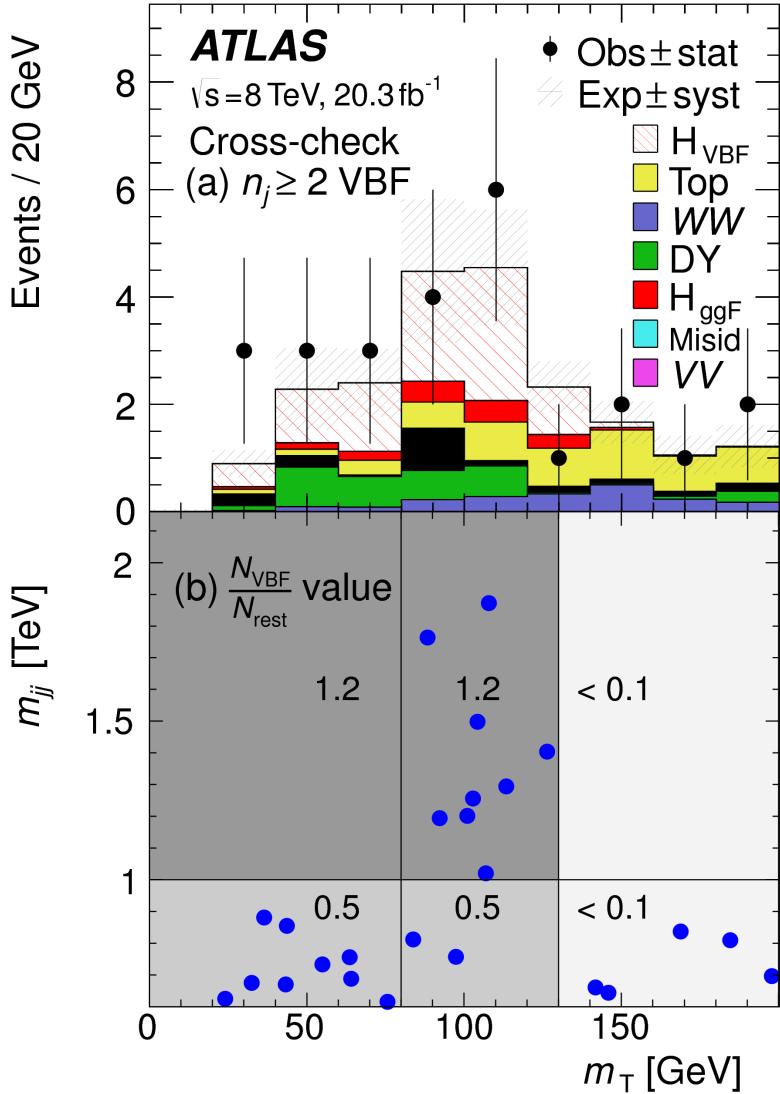


Figure 5.16: Postfit distributions in the cut-based VBF analysis. Panel (a) shows the one-dimensional m_T distribution, while (b) shows the data candidates split into the bins of m_T and m_{jj} used in the final fit[21].

2086 signal candidates lower m_{jj} region due to its ability to recognize correlations with other variables.
 2087 While the context of these results in the broader $H \rightarrow WW^*$ statistical analysis will be presented
 2088 in the next chapter, the significance of the VBF observation can be shown here. In the BDT analysis,
 2089 the expected signal significance was 2.7σ , while the observed significance was 3.1σ . In the cut-based
 2090 analysis, the expected significance was 2.1σ and the observed significance was 3.0σ . The compatibility
 2091 between these two results can be evaluated by computing the probability of observing a larger difference

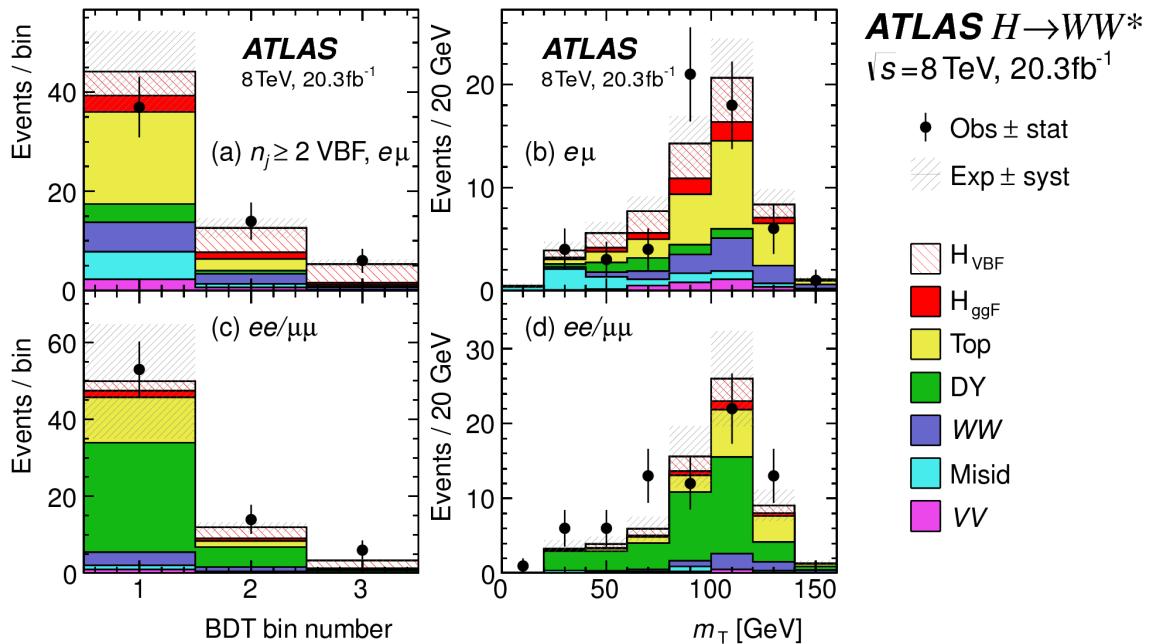


Figure 5.17: Postfit distributions in the BDT VBF analysis[21].

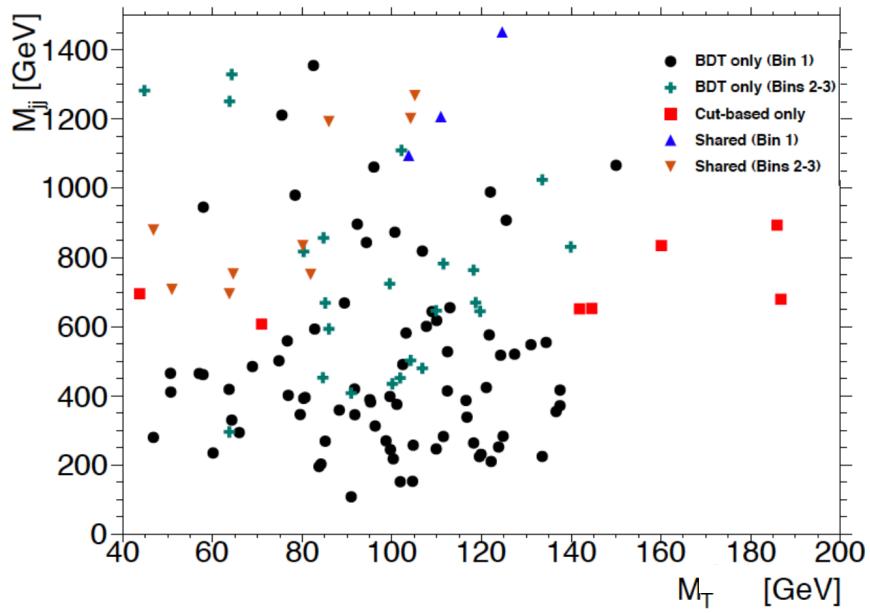


Figure 5.18: Overlap between cut-based and BDT VBF signal region candidates in the m_{jj} - m_T plane.

2092 in Z_0 values than the one measured. Using toy Monte Carlo with the ggF signal strength fixed to unity
2093 and considering only statistical uncertainties, this probability is computed to be 79%, indicating good
2094 agreement between the analyses.

2095 This result represents the first observation of the vector boson fusion production of a Higgs boson.

*The feeling is less like an ending than just another
starting point.*

Chuck Palahniuk

6

2096

2097

Combined Run I $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$

2098

results

2099 6.1 INTRODUCTION

2100 In the final statistical analysis of $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$, the dedicated gluon-gluon fusion and vector
2101 boson fusion sensitive signal regions are all combined into a single fit to determine the main parameters
2102 of interest, the Higgs signal strength μ and mass m_H . Therefore, while the specific requirements applied
2103 for the VBF sensitive analysis are discussed in chapter 5, the final measurement of these parameters can
2104 only be discussed in combination with the results of the ggF dedicated analysis. For example, because
2105 ggF Higgs production is considered a background in the VBF analysis, the ggF dedicated signal regions
2106 can actually constrain the normalization of this background in the VBF dedicated region.

2107 This chapter presents the combined interpretation of results in the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ analysis

SR category i			Fit var.
n_j , flavor	$\otimes m_{\ell\ell}$	$\otimes p_T^{\ell 2}$	
$n_j = 0$			
$e\mu$	$\otimes [10, 30, 55]$	$\otimes [10, 15, 20, \infty]$	$\otimes [e, \mu]$
$ee/\mu\mu$	$\otimes [12, 55]$	$\otimes [10, \infty]$	m_T
$n_j = 1$			
$e\mu$	$\otimes [10, 30, 55]$	$\otimes [10, 15, 20, \infty]$	$\otimes [e, \mu]$
$ee/\mu\mu$	$\otimes [12, 55]$	$\otimes [10, \infty]$	m_T
$n_j \geq 2$ ggF			
$e\mu$	$\otimes [10, 55]$	$\otimes [10, \infty]$	m_T
$n_j \geq 2$ VBF			
$e\mu$	$\otimes [10, 50]$	$\otimes [10, \infty]$	O_{BDT}
$ee/\mu\mu$	$\otimes [12, 50]$	$\otimes [10, \infty]$	O_{BDT}

Table 6.1: All signal regions definitions input into final statistical fit[21].

for gluon fusion and vector boson fusion Higgs production. First, the results of the dedicated gluon fusion search are presented. Then, a comparison of the individual production mode signal strengths (μ_{ggF} and μ_{VBF} and a measurement of the combined signal strength (μ) are shown. Subsequently, the measured values of the Higgs couplings to fermions and vector bosons is presented. Finally, the cross section measurement for ggF and VBF production are shown.

6.2 RESULTS OF DEDICATION GLUON FUSION $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ SEARCH

The details of the dedicated gluon fusion $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ search are not discussed in this thesis and instead left to more comprehensive sources[21]. However, a brief summary of the results are essential for describing the results of the full analysis and interpreting the results of the dedicated VBF search in this broader context.

Table 6.1 shows the individual signal regions that were input into the final statistical fit. The ggF dedicated bins use m_T as their discriminating variable and are separated into bins of p_T of the subleading lepton as well. The VBF dedicated bin uses the O_{BDT} distribution as its final discriminant.

Table 6.2 shows the yields in the various signal regions in both data and expected signal and back-

2122 grounds. The yields for signal and background are all scaled according to the final normalizations calcu-
2123 lated in the fit.

	N_{obs}	N_{bkg}	N_{ggF}	N_{VBF}
$n_j = 0$	3750	3430 ± 90	300 ± 50	8 ± 4
$n_j = 1$	1596	1470 ± 40	102 ± 26	17 ± 5
$n_j \geq 2, \text{ggF } e\mu$	1017	960 ± 40	37 ± 11	13 ± 1.4
$n_j \geq 2, \text{VBF}$	130	99 ± 9	7.7 ± 2.6	21 ± 3

Table 6.2: Post-fit yields in the different ggF and VBF dedicated signal regions[21].

2124 Figure 6.1 shows the final post-fit m_T distribution in the $n_j \leq 1$ regions. The data are very consistent
2125 with the hypothesis of ggF Higgs production.

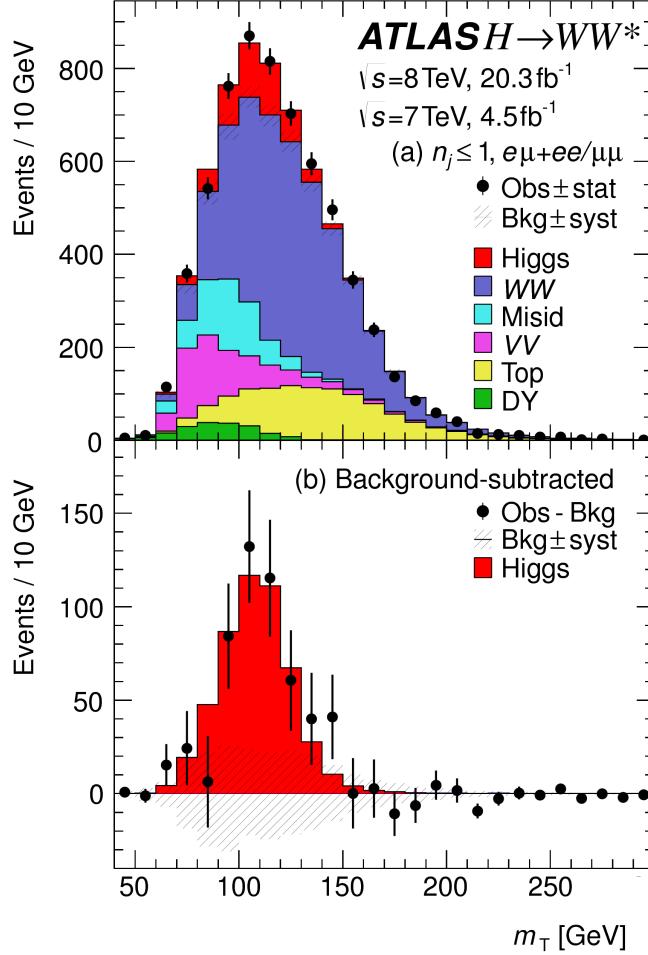


Figure 6.1: Post-fit m_T distribution in the $n_j \leq 1$ regions[21].

2126 These yields are used as input, along with the VBF results in chapter 5, for the physical interpretation
2127 of results presented in subsequent sections.

2128 **6.3 SIGNAL STRENGTH MEASUREMENTS IN ggF AND VBF PRODUCTION**

2129 When all of the signal regions are combined in the fit, there can be a combined measurement of the sig-
2130 nal strength as well as the individual ggF and VBF signal strengths. The combined signal strength is the
2131 ratio of the sum of the gluon fusion and VBF cross sections to the theory prediction, or a singal strength
2132 for the total Higgs production cross section that this analysis is sensitive to. The final measured com-
2133 bined signal strength μ is measured shown in equation 6.1.

$$\begin{aligned} \mu &= 1.09 \quad {}^{+0.16}_{-0.15} \text{ (stat.)} \quad {}^{+0.08}_{-0.07} \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{expt} \\ \text{syst} \end{array} \right) \quad {}^{+0.15}_{-0.12} \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{theo} \\ \text{syst} \end{array} \right) \quad \pm 0.03 \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{lumi} \\ \text{syst} \end{array} \right) \\ &= 1.09 \quad {}^{+0.16}_{-0.15} \text{ (stat)} \quad {}^{+0.17}_{-0.14} \text{ (syst)} \\ &= 1.09 \quad {}^{+0.23}_{-0.21}. \end{aligned} \tag{6.1}$$

2134 Figure 6.2 gives the best fit signal strength $\hat{\mu}$ as a function of hte hypothesized Higgs mass. The value
2135 at 125.36 GeVcorresponds to the μ quoted in equation 6.1. This value of the Higgs mass is used because
2136 it is the most precise mass measurement from ATLAS, a result of the combined $\gamma\gamma$ and ZZ mass mea-
2137 surements[?].

2138 As explained in chapter 3, a probability p_0 can be computed using the test statistic q_0 to quantify the
2139 probability that the background could fluctuate to produce an excess at least as large as the one observed
2140 in the data. The local p_0 value is shown in figure 6.3 as a function of m_H . The minimum p_0 value is
2141 at $m_H = 130$ GeV and coresponds to a significance of 6.1σ . The curve is relatively flat and the sig-
2142 nificance is the same at 125.36 GeVwithin the quoted precision. The expected significance for a signal
2143 with strength $\mu = 1.0$ is 5.8σ . This represents the first discovery level significance measurement in the
2144 $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ analysis.

2145 All the results presented so far in this section have been for the combined gluon fusion and VBF pro-
2146 duction modes. However, each signal strength can be calculated separately in the likelihood as well.
2147 There are two ways to do this. First, the likelihood can be parameterized in terms of a single parameter,

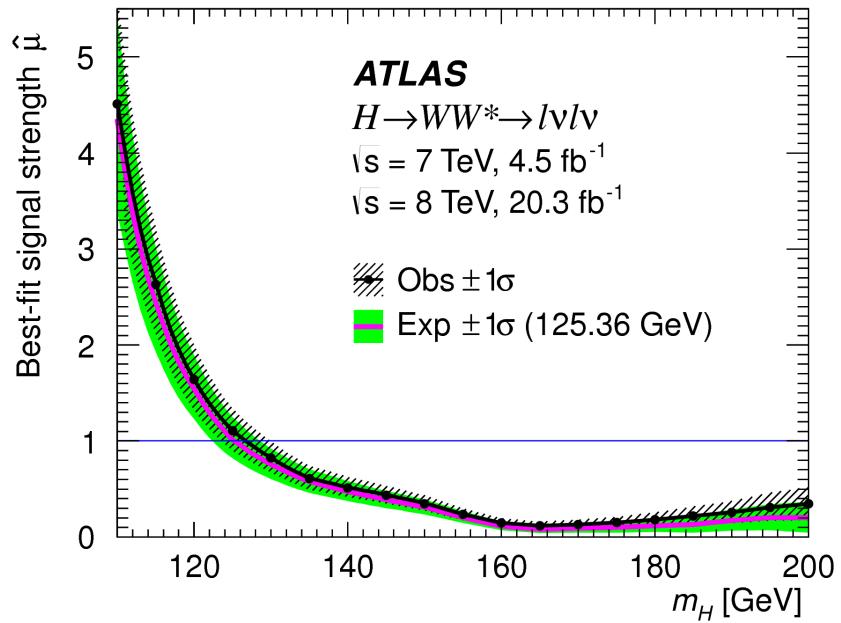


Figure 6.2: Best fit signal strength $\hat{\mu}$ as a function of hypothesized m_H [21].

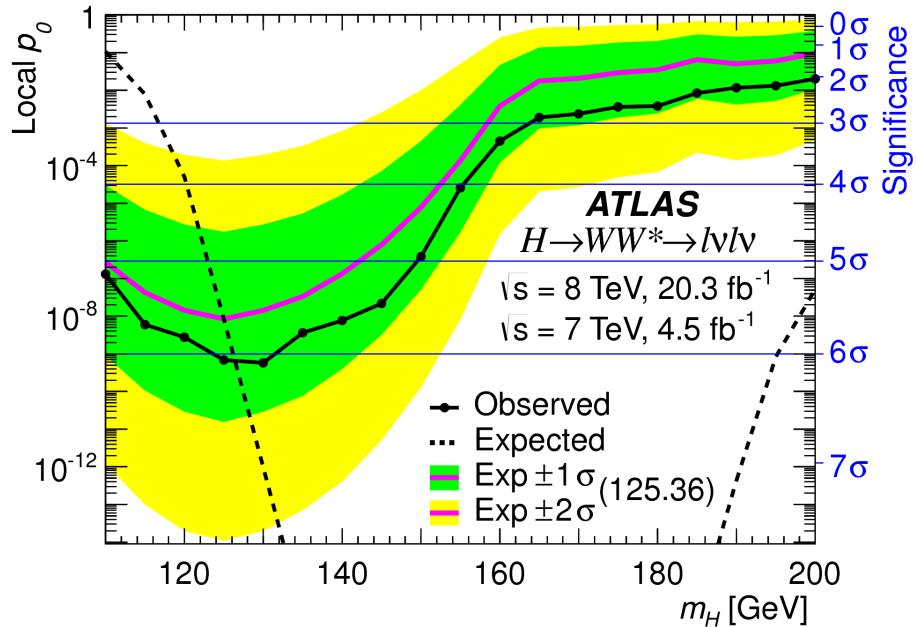


Figure 6.3: Local p_0 as a function of m_H [21].

²¹⁴⁸ the ratio of the VBF and gluon fusion signal strengths. With this method, the significance of the VBF
²¹⁴⁹ observation can be evaluated. Figure 6.4 shows the likelihood as a function of the ratio $\mu_{\text{VBF}}/\mu_{\text{ggF}}$.

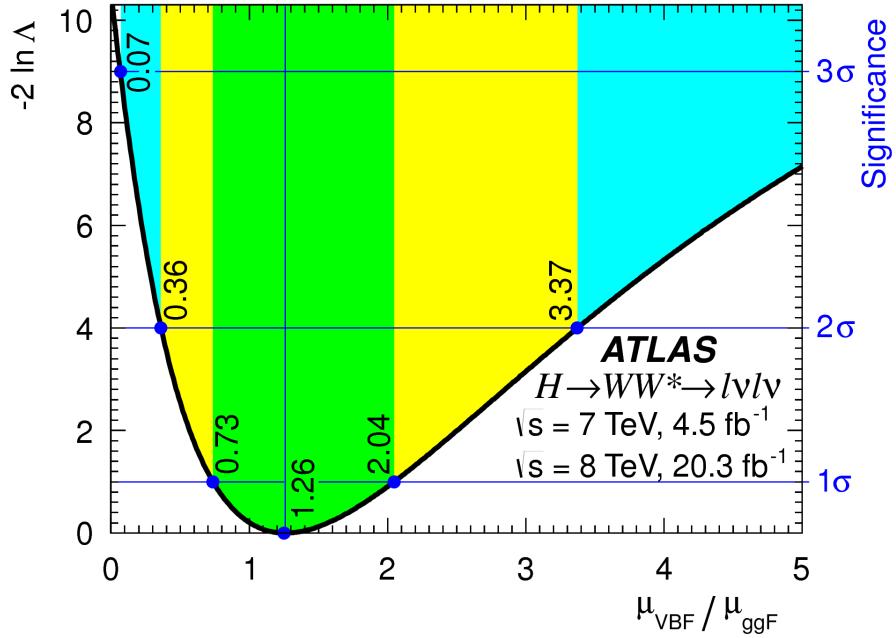


Figure 6.4: Likelihood as a function of $\mu_{\text{VBF}} / \mu_{\text{ggF}}$ [21].

2150 The best fit value of the ratio of signal strengths is shown in equation 6.2. Within the quoted uncer-
2151 tainties, it is consistent with a ratio of unity.

$$\frac{\mu_{\text{VBF}}}{\mu_{\text{ggF}}} = 1.26^{+0.61} (\text{stat.})^{+0.50} (\text{syst.}) = 1.26^{+0.79}_{-0.53} \quad (6.2)$$

2152 The null hypothesis for VBF production corresponds to a ratio of $\mu_{\text{VBF}} / \mu_{\text{ggF}} = 0$. The likelihood
2153 in figure 6.4 gives a significance of 3.2σ at $\mu_{\text{VBF}} / \mu_{\text{ggF}} = 0$, as quoted in chapter 5.

2154 In addition to the ratio of signal strengths, each signal strength can be varied independently in the
2155 likelihood as well. Figure 6.5 shows the two dimensional likelihood scan in the $\mu_{\text{ggF}}-\mu_{\text{VBF}}$ plane. The
2156 best fit values of the two signal strengths are shown in equation 6.3. Both are consistent with unity
2157 within their uncertainties.

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_{\text{ggF}} &= 1.02 \pm 0.19^{+0.22}_{-0.18} = 1.02^{+0.29}_{-0.26} \\ \mu_{\text{VBF}} &= 1.27 \pm 0.44^{+0.29}_{-0.40} = 1.27^{+0.53}_{-0.45}. \end{aligned} \quad (6.3)$$

(stat.) (syst.)

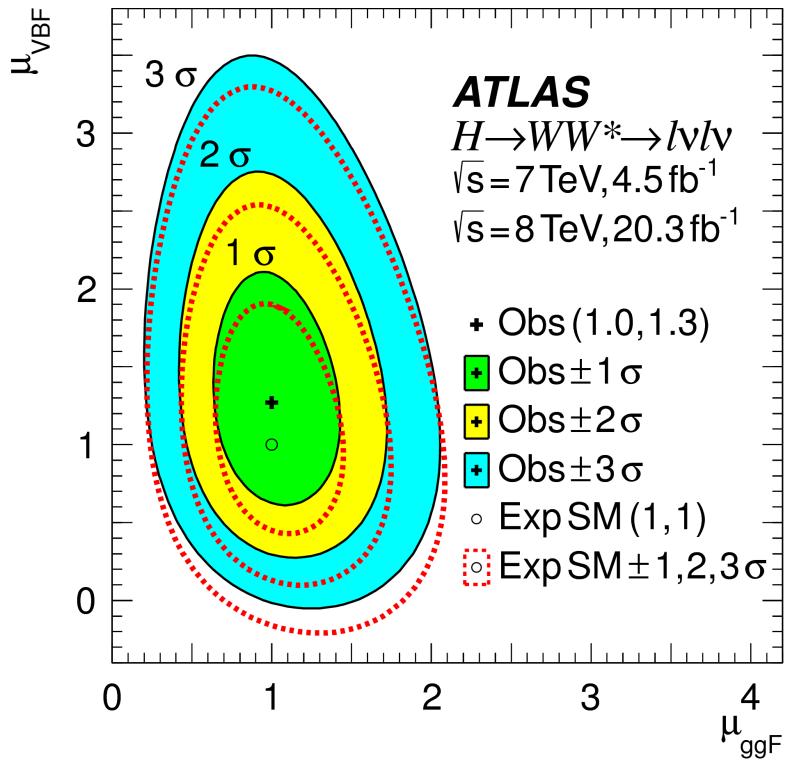


Figure 6.5: Likelihood scan as a function of μ_{VBF} and μ_{ggF} [21].

2158 6.4 MEASUREMENT OF HIGGS COUPLINGS TO VECTOR BOSONS AND FERMIONS

2159 Similar to the parameterization of signal strength, the couplings of the Higgs to fermions and bosons can
 2160 also be parameterized. The parameter of interest in this case is κ , or the ratio of the measured coupling
 2161 to the standard model expectation. Both the fermion and boson couplings have these so-called scale fac-
 2162 tors, κ_F for fermions and κ_V for bosons. Gluon fusion production is sensitive to the fermion couplings
 2163 through the top quark loops in its production, while VBF production is sensitive to the vector boson
 2164 couplings in its production. Both modes are sensitive to the vector boson couplings in their decays. The
 2165 signal strengths will have dependence on the coupling scale factors as described in equation 6.4[2].

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_{\text{ggF}} &\propto \frac{\kappa_F^2 \cdot \kappa_V^2}{(\mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow f\bar{f}} + \mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow gg}) \kappa_F^2 + (\mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow VV}) \kappa_V^2} \\ \mu_{\text{VBF}} &\propto \frac{\kappa_V^4}{(\mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow f\bar{f}} + \mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow gg}) \kappa_F^2 + (\mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow VV}) \kappa_V^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (6.4)$$

2166 Figure 6.6 shows the two-dimensional likelihood scan of κ_F and κ_V . The best-fit values are given in
2167 equation 6.5. The best-fit values are consistent with unity within their uncertainties.

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa_F &= 0.93 & +0.24 & +0.21 & = 0.93 & +0.32 \\ && -0.18 & -0.14 && -0.23 \\ \kappa_V &= 1.04 & +0.07 & +0.07 & = 1.04 & \pm 0.11. \end{aligned} \quad (6.5)$$

(stat.) (syst.)

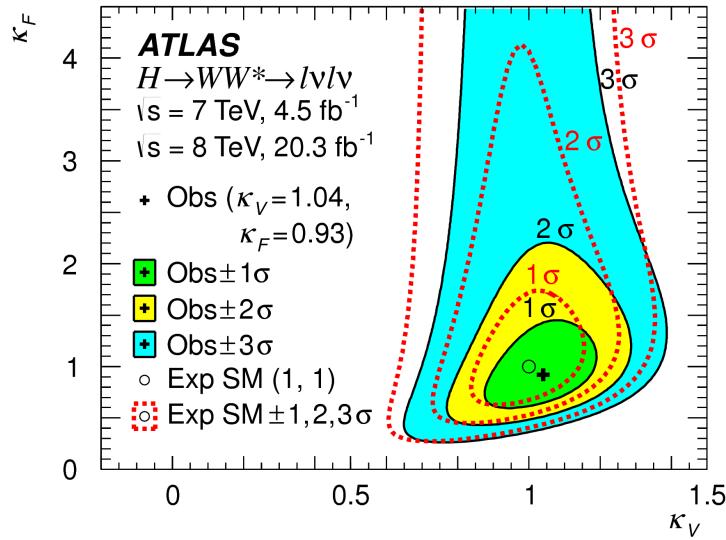


Figure 6.6: Likelihood scan as a function of κ_F and κ_V [21].

2168 **6.5 HIGGS PRODUCTION CROSS SECTION MEASUREMENT**

2169 Another measurement that comes naturally from the signal strength numbers quoted earlier is the pro-
2170 duction cross section and 7 and 8 TeV for both gluon fusion and VBF production. The general equa-
2171 tion for calculating the cross section is given in equation 6.6.

$$\begin{aligned} (\sigma \cdot \mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow WW^*})_{\text{obs}} &= \frac{(N_{\text{sig}})_{\text{obs}}}{\mathcal{A} \cdot \mathcal{C} \cdot \mathcal{B}_{WW \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu}} \cdot \frac{1}{\int L dt} \\ &= \hat{\mu} \cdot (\sigma \cdot \mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow WW^*})_{\text{exp}} \end{aligned} \quad (6.6)$$

2172 $(N_{\text{sig}})_{\text{obs}}$ is the number of events observed in data. \mathcal{A} is the geometric and kinematic acceptance of
 2173 the detector, while \mathcal{C} is the efficiency of the signal region selection for events that are reconstructed in the
 2174 detector. The branching ratio of a WW system to leptons must also be divided out. The production
 2175 cross section depends on the center of mass energy and the production mode desired (gluon fusion or
 2176 VBF), and so three separate cross section measurements are quoted in equation 6.7.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sigma_{\text{ggF}}^{\text{7TeV}} \cdot \mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow WW^*} &= 2.0 \pm 1.7 {}^{+1.2}_{-1.1} = 2.0 {}^{+2.1}_{-2.0} \text{ pb} \\
 \sigma_{\text{ggF}}^{\text{8TeV}} \cdot \mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow WW^*} &= 4.6 \pm 0.9 {}^{+0.8}_{-0.7} = 4.6 {}^{+1.2}_{-1.1} \text{ pb} \\
 \sigma_{\text{VBF}}^{\text{8TeV}} \cdot \mathcal{B}_{H \rightarrow WW^*} &= 0.51 {}^{+0.17}_{-0.15} {}^{+0.13}_{-0.08} = 0.51 {}^{+0.22}_{-0.17} \text{ pb.}
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.7}$$

(stat.) (syst.)

2177 The predicted cross section values for gluon fusion are 3.3 ± 0.4 pb at 7 TeV and 4.2 ± 0.5 pb
 2178 at 8 TeV, consistent with the measured values within their uncertainties. For vector boson fusion, the
 2179 predicted cross section is 0.35 ± 0.02 pb, again consistent with the measured value.

2180 6.6 CONCLUSION

2181 The combined analysis of the gluon fusion and vector boson fusion processes in $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$
 2182 in the 7 and 8 TeV datasets has yielded the first discovery level significance for Higgs production in this
 2183 decay channel. Additionally, precise measurements of the couplings to vector bosons and fermions are
 2184 given. Finally, signal strengths and cross sections for each production mode are measured. Figure 6.7
 2185 shows the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ measurements in comparison with other Higgs decay channels in
 2186 ATLAS. The measurement of signal strength from this channel remains the most sensitive in both the
 2187 gluon fusion and VBF production modes for the Run 1 dataset.

ATLAS

Individual analysis

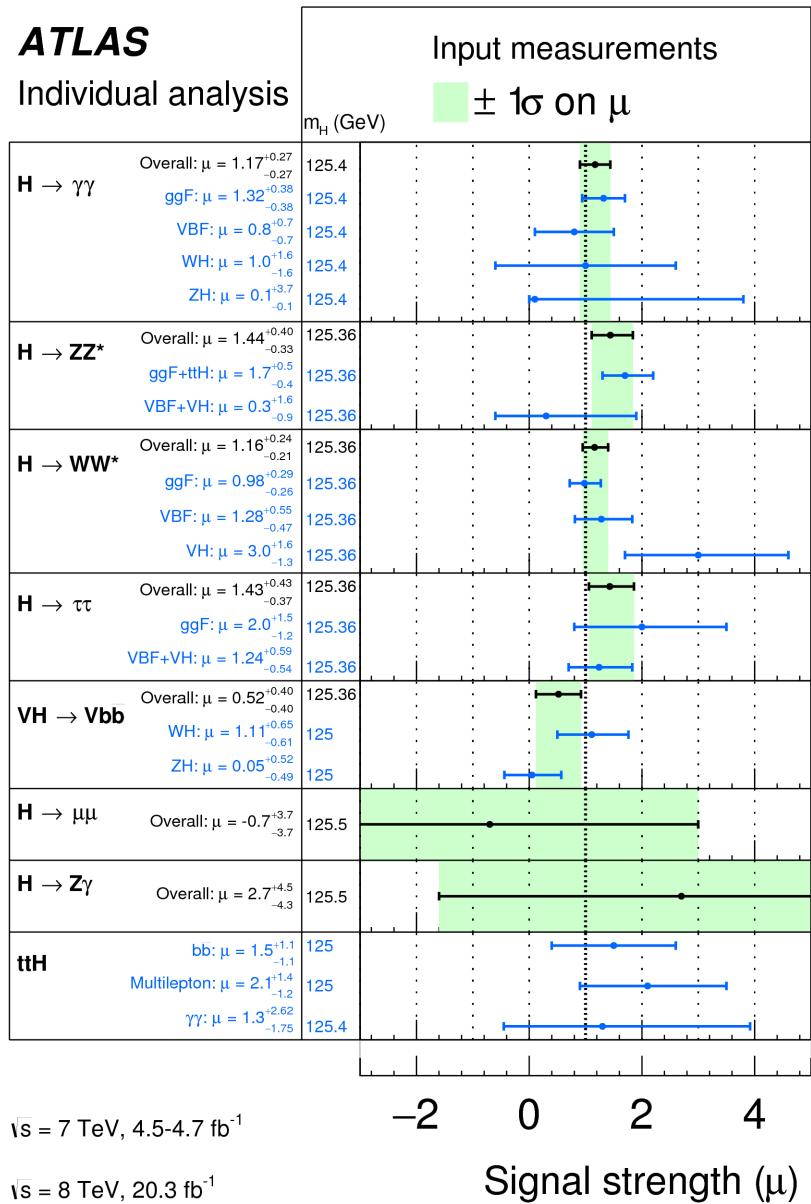


Figure 6.7: Comparison of signal strength measurements in different Higgs decay channels on ATLAS[23].

Part III

2188

2189 Search for Higgs pair production in the

2190 $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel in LHC Run 2 at $\sqrt{s} =$

2191 13 TeV

*Passion is in all great searches and is necessary to all
creative endeavors.*

W. Eugene Smith

7

2192

2193 Search for Higgs pair production in boosted 2194 $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final states

2195 7.1 INTRODUCTION

2196 After the discovery of the Higgs boson in the ATLAS Run 1 dataset and the subsequent measurements
2197 of its properties, the Higgs transformed into a potential tool in searches for physics beyond the Stan-
2198 dard Model. The pair production cross section of the Higgs can be enhanced through BSM physics.
2199 Studying di-Higgs production also probes the Higgs self-coupling, shedding light on the structure
2200 of the Higgs potential. This chapter presents a search for resonant production of a Higgs pair in the
2201 $X \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state in 3.2 fb^{-1} of data collected at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$. In particular, this
2202 chapter focuses on a search for this final state in the regime where m_X is large ($\gtrsim 1 \text{ TeV}$) and the Higgs
2203 bosons in the decay are significantly boosted. A tailored selection for this boosted selection, using novel

2204 techniques in jet substructure and b -tagging, is discussed. Then, the data-driven background estimate is
 2205 presented. Finally, the results of the search are shown. The signal models used as benchmarks are a spin-
 2206 2 Randall Sundrum graviton (RSG) and a narrow width spin-0 resonance. These models are described
 2207 in more detail in Chapter 1. Limits on signal models are reserved for the next chapter where the results of
 2208 this chapter are combined with the results of a separate selection dedicated to the lower m_X regime.

2209 7.2 MOTIVATION

2210 With the center of mass energy increase from $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV to $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV, the LHC and ATLAS
 2211 are able to probe new resonances at higher mass scales than previously accessible in Run 1. This is a
 2212 powerful motivator for searching for a new resonance in the early 13 TeV data. Figure 7.1 shows the
 2213 ratios of parton luminosities between 8 and 13 TeV for different resonance masses. For a resonance of
 2214 $M_X = 2$ TeV, the cross section at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV is roughly a factor of 10 larger than at $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV.

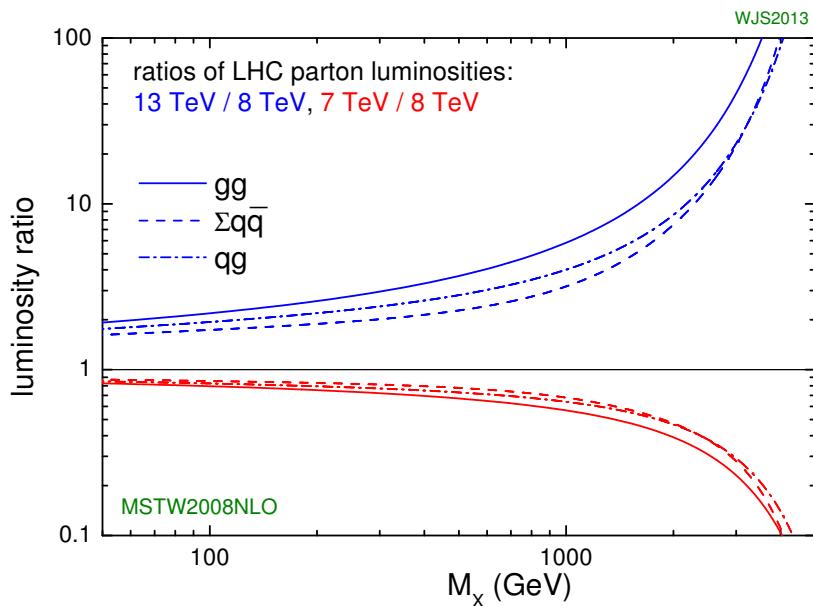


Figure 7.1: Parton luminosity ratios as a function of resonance mass M_X for 13/8 TeV and 7/8 TeV [24].

2215 Higgs pair production offers a vast array of unprobed regions of phase space where searches for BSM
 2216 physics can be made. Chapter 1 discusses some possibilities for both resonant and non-resonant enhance-

ment of the di-Higgs production cross section. Given the increased mass reach of the LHC in Run 2, it is particularly important to focus on resonant searches at high m_X . One consideration when conducting a search in the HH final state is which decay modes of the Higgs to consider. Figure 7.2 shows the branching ratio of the HH final state for different combinations of decays of each individual Higgs. As the largest branching ratio for the 125 GeV Higgs is $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$, the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ branching ratio is also the largest at 33%.

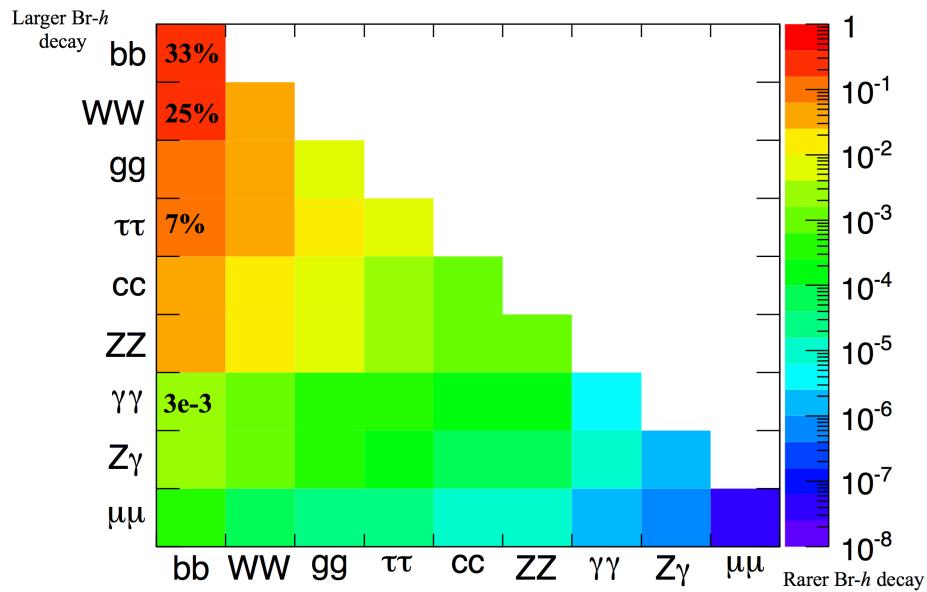


Figure 7.2: Summary of HH branching ratios [25].

At high m_X , the Higgs bosons resulting from the decay of a heavy resonance will have large p_T^* . The ΔR between the decay products of the Higgs is inversely proportional to the Higgs p_T , as shown in equation ??.

$$\Delta R \approx \frac{2m}{p_T} \quad (7.1)$$

Figure 7.3 shows the minimum ΔR between truth level B decay vertices in simulation samples for Randall-Sundrum gravitons of different masses. The figure shows that as the mass of the graviton increases, the ΔR distribution between the b quarks in the Higgs decay tends to shift to lower values. Be-

*In the limit that $m_H \ell \ell m_X$, the Higgs p_T is roughly $m_X/2$.

cause of this effect, it is necessary to tailor a selection to target these merged b -jets.

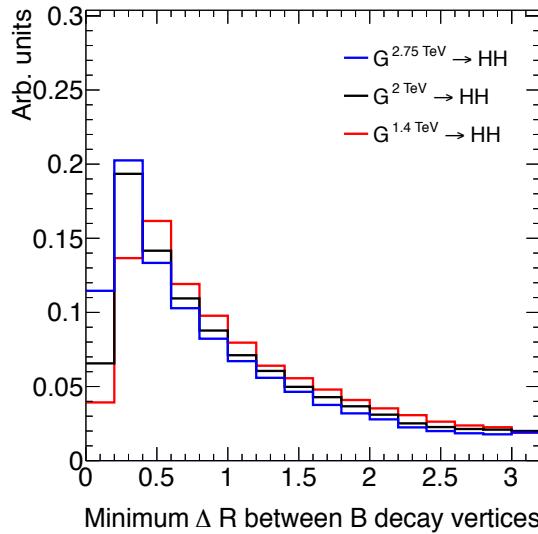


Figure 7.3: Minimum ΔR between B decay vertices for different RSG masses in a $G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH \rightarrow 4b$ sample with $c = 1$

7.3 DATA AND SIMULATION SAMPLES

7.3.1 SIGNAL MODELS

While the resonance search is by its nature generic (as it is a simple search for a peak in the $4b$ invariant mass spectrum), there are two signal models that the selection requirements have been optimized for. The first is Randall-Sundrum (RSG) model, where a tower of massive spin-2 Kaluza-Klein gravitons is predicted. The second is a heavy narrow spin-0 resonance, the so-called “heavy Higgs”. This type of resonance arises, for example, in the two Higgs doublet model (2HDM). More details about the physics of these models and their motivation is given in chapter 1.

Signal graviton (G_{KK}^*) events are generated at leading order (LO) with **MADGRAPH5 v2.2.2** [92].

The PDF set used is the **NNPDF2.3 LO** set [93]. For modeling parton shower and hadronization in jets, **PYTHIA 8.186** is used with the A14 tune [80, 94]. The free parameters in the RSG model are the graviton mass and the coupling constant $c \equiv k/\bar{M}_{\text{Pl}}$ [†]. Both the production cross section and width of the

[†] k is the curvature constant for the warped extra dimension and \bar{M}_{Pl} is the Planck mass divided by 8π

2242 graviton are proportional to c^2 . Samples are generated at both $c = 1$ and $c = 2$ for a variety of mass
2243 points between 300 GeV and 3 TeV.

2244 The second signal sample is a heavy spin-0 resonance H with a fixed width of $\Gamma_H = 1$ GeV. This
2245 is generated with **MADGRAPH5** and uses the **CT10** PDF set [83]. The parton shower and hadronization
2246 are handled by **HERWIG ++** with the **CTEQ6L1** PDF set and the **UEEE5** event tune [84, 95, 96]. Because
2247 the width and branching ratios depend on 2HDM parameters, each mass point generated with this fixed
2248 width corresponds to a different point in the 2HDM parameter phase space. Mass points are generated
2249 between 300 GeV and 1 TeV as with the RSG signal samples.

2250 7.3.2 BACKGROUND SAMPLES

2251 While the dominant **QCD** multijet background is estimated with a fully data-driven method, the sub-
2252 dominant backgrounds $t\bar{t}$ and $Z + \text{jets}$ are modeled with some input from simulation.

2253 $t\bar{t}$ events are simulated at next-to-leading order (NLO) with the **POWHEG-BOX** version 1 generator us-
2254 ing the **CT10** PDF set [97]. The parton shower, hadronization, and underlying event are simulated with
2255 **PYTHIA 6.428** with the **CTEQ6L1** PDF set [79]. The Perugia 2012 tune is used [98]. NNLO **QCD** cor-
2256 rections to the cross sections are computed in **Top++ 2.0** [99]. The top quark mass is set to 172.5 GeV.
2257 The shapes of distributions in $t\bar{t}$ are taken from MC while the normalization is taken from data.

2258 Finally, the $Z + \text{jets}$ background is simulated with **PYTHIA 8.186** and the **NNPDF2.3** LO PDF set. This
2259 background is negligible compared to the others and is taken fully from MC.

2260 7.3.3 DATA SAMPLE AND TRIGGER

2261 This analysis is done on 3.2 fb^{-1} of data taken in 2015 at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV. The details of the machine
2262 conditions during this time can be found in Chapter 2. Only data which was taken during stable beam
2263 conditions with all detectors functioning is used. Events must pass a trigger which requires a single
2264 360 GeV large radius ($R = 1.0$) jet to be reconstructed in the HLT. Figure 7.4 shows the trigger effi-
2265 ciency for various trigger options as a function of graviton mass. Above $m_G > 1$ TeV, the single large
2266 radius jet trigger is 99% efficient for events passing the signal selection.

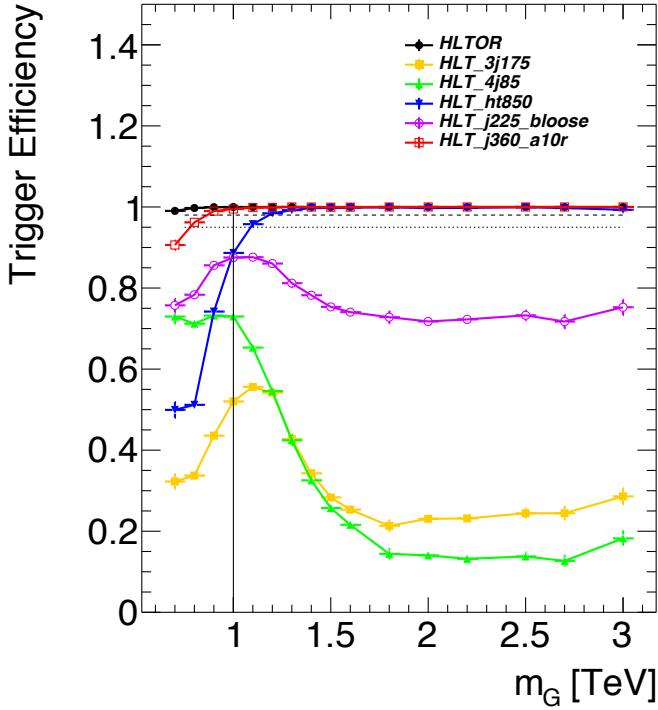


Figure 7.4: Trigger efficiency for events passing all signal region selections as a function of mass in $G_{\text{KK}}^* \rightarrow HH \rightarrow 4b$ samples with $c = 1$ [26]. In the trigger names, “j” refers to a jet or jets. “ht” refers to H_T , the scalar sum of transverse momenta in the event. “bloose” refers to a loose b -tagging requirement applied to the jet. “a10r” refers to anti- k_T jets with $R = 1.0$. The numbers at the end are the thresholds on the given quantity in GeV.

2267 7.4 EVENT RECONSTRUCTION AND OBJECT SELECTION

2268 The boosted selection first begins by defining a unique set of objects that can be exploited to increase
 2269 signal efficiency in the kinematic regime where the final state b -jets are very merged.

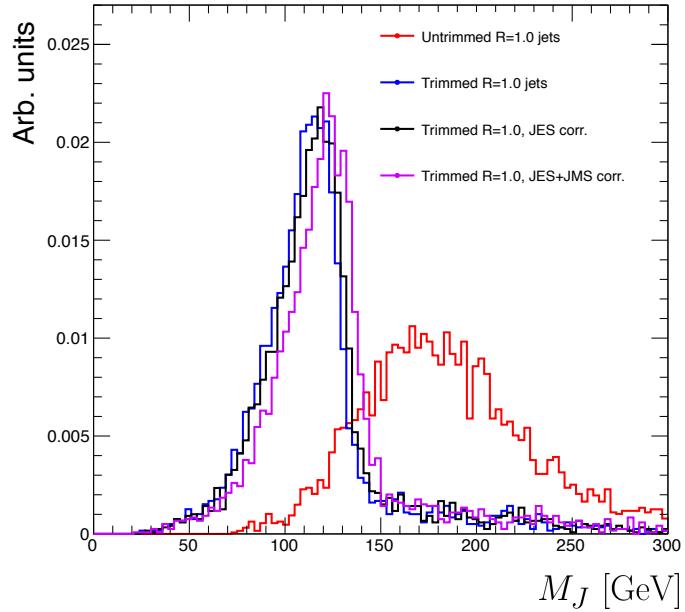
2270 7.4.1 LARGE RADIUS ($R = 1.0$) JETS

2271 The first step towards reconstructing the final state is to define objects that can be used to measure the
 2272 kinematics of the Higgs bosons. In the boosted selection anti- k_T jets with a radius parameter of 1.0
 2273 are used. These jets are much larger in angular size than the typical $R = 0.4$ jets and are intended to
 2274 encompass both jets resulting from the Higgs decay[‡]. The jets are built from clusters in the calorimeter

[‡]This is in contrast to the resolved selection, which uses two $R = 0.4$ anti- k_T jets for each Higgs

2275 calibrated with local calibration weighting [17].

2276 Because of the large extent of these jets, great care must be taken to remove potential contributions of
2277 calorimeter clusters from pile-up. This is done using a technique called jet trimming [100]. With trim-
2278 ming, the constituents of the large radius jet are re-clustered with a smaller radius with the k_T algorithm.
2279 Then, these so-called subjets are removed from the larger jet if $p_T^{\text{subjet}}/p_T^{\text{jet}} < f_{\text{cut}}$. In this analysis, the
2280 subjet radius is $R = 0.2$ and $f_{\text{cut}} = 0.05$. Trimming has been shown to improve the mass resolution
2281 of large radius jets. Figure 7.5 shows the effect of trimming on the large radius jet mass (M_J). Because
2282 the large radius jet fully contains the higgs decay products, its invariant mass should correspond to the
2283 125 GeV mass of the Higgs. The trimming algorithm brings the jet mass much closer to the expected
2284 Higgs mass and improves the mass resolution.



2285 **Figure 7.5:** Comparison of untrimmed and trimmed jet masses for large radius jets in a RSG sample with $m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} = 1 \text{ TeV}$.
2286 JES (JMS) refers to the standard jet energy (mass) scale calibration for ATLAS [17].

2285 The large radius jets are required to satisfy $250 < p_T < 1500 \text{ GeV}$. They must also be within
2286 $|\eta| < 2.0$ in order to ensure that the full jet is within the inner detector tracking volume. Finally, they
2287 are required to have $M_J > 50 \text{ GeV}$. The upper p_T cut and lower threshold on mass are applied to
2288 correspond to the kinematic range where uncertainties are available in ATLAS calibrations [101, 102].

2289 7.4.2 TRACK JETS AND b -TAGGING

2290 Because the b -jets from boosted Higgs decays are so close together (as illustrated in figure 7.3), narrow ra-
2291 dius jets are required to fully resolve both b -jets. The minimum radius feasible for jets based on calorime-
2292 ter deposits is determined by the calorimeter granularity. However, because b -tagging relies on informa-
2293 tion from the inner detector, it is possible to define another type of jet that can have a smaller radius and
2294 better b -tagging resolution. These jets are called “track jets” [27, 102].

2295 Track jets are formed by applying the usual anti- k_T clustering algorithm to tracks that are required
2296 to be consistent with the primary vertex. After the jet axis has been determined using these tracks, a sec-
2297 ond step of track association is also performed to add tracks that can be useful for b -tagging [27]. In this
2298 analysis, the tracks are clustered with a radius parameter of $R = 0.2$. This radius has been shown to
2299 give good performance in boosted Higgs tagging [27, 102]. Figure 7.6 shows a comparison among dif-
2300 ferent track jet radii of the efficiency for reconstructing two b -jets from each Higgs in a RSG sample as a
2301 function of mass. Track jets with radius of 0.2 give the best performance, especially at high mass.

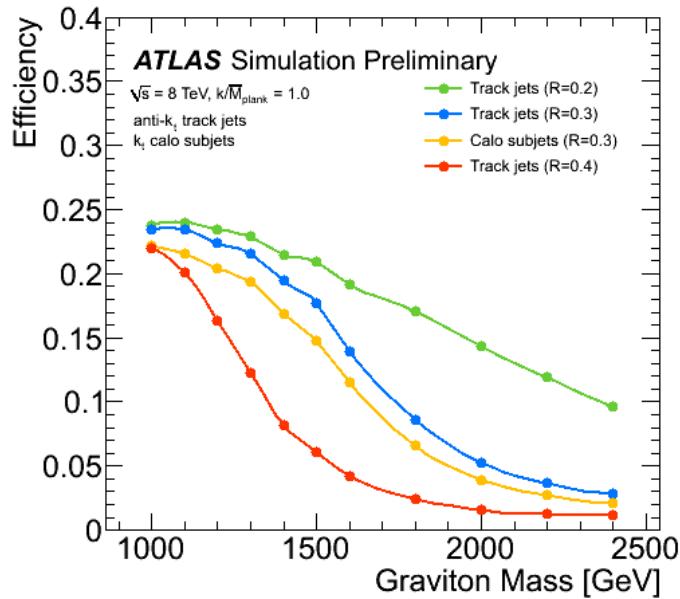


Figure 7.6: Efficiency of finding two b -jets from each Higgs in an RSG event using calorimeter jets with $R = 0.3$ or different track jet radii [27]

2302 In this analysis, track jets are required to have $p_T > 10$ GeV and $|\eta| < 2.5$. They must also have at

2303 least two tracks.

2304 **7.4.3 MUONS**

2305 Muons are used in this study to correct the four-momenta of calorimeter jets by accounting for semi-
2306 leptonic b decays. The muons used are combined ID and MS muons which must satisfy tight identifica-
2307 tion requirements [16]. The muons must have $p_T > 4 \text{ GeV}$ and $|\eta| < 2.5$. Table 7.1 summarizes the
2308 object requirements described in this section.

	R	p_T	$ \eta $	M
Calorimeter jets	1.0	$250 < p_T < 1500 \text{ GeV}$	< 2.0	$> 50 \text{ GeV}$
Track jets	0.2	$> 10 \text{ GeV}$	< 2.5	-
Muons	-	4 GeV	< 2.5	-

Table 7.1: Summary of requirements on objects used in the $X \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ search

2309 **7.5 EVENT SELECTION**

2310 The first requirement in the boosted selection is for ≥ 2 large radius jets satisfying the selections outlined
2311 above. The two highest momentum large-R jets in the event are referred to as “Higgs candidates”. The
2312 leading jet is required to have $p_T > 350 \text{ GeV}$.

2313 Track jets satisfying the object selections are matched to Higgs candidate jets via ghost association [103].
2314 Each Higgs candidate must have at least 2 track jets associated with it. These basic requirements are illus-
2315 trated in figure 7.7

2316 The QCD multijet background produces less central jets than high mass resonances, so there is an ad-
2317 ditional requirement that the two Higgs candidates be close together in η . The large-R jets are required
2318 to satisfy $|\Delta\eta(JJ)| < 1.7$.

2319 The final set of requirements ensures that the Higgs candidates are consistent with expected proper-
2320 ties of the 125.0 GeV Higgs. First, a variable (X_{hh}) is defined to measure the consistency of both of the

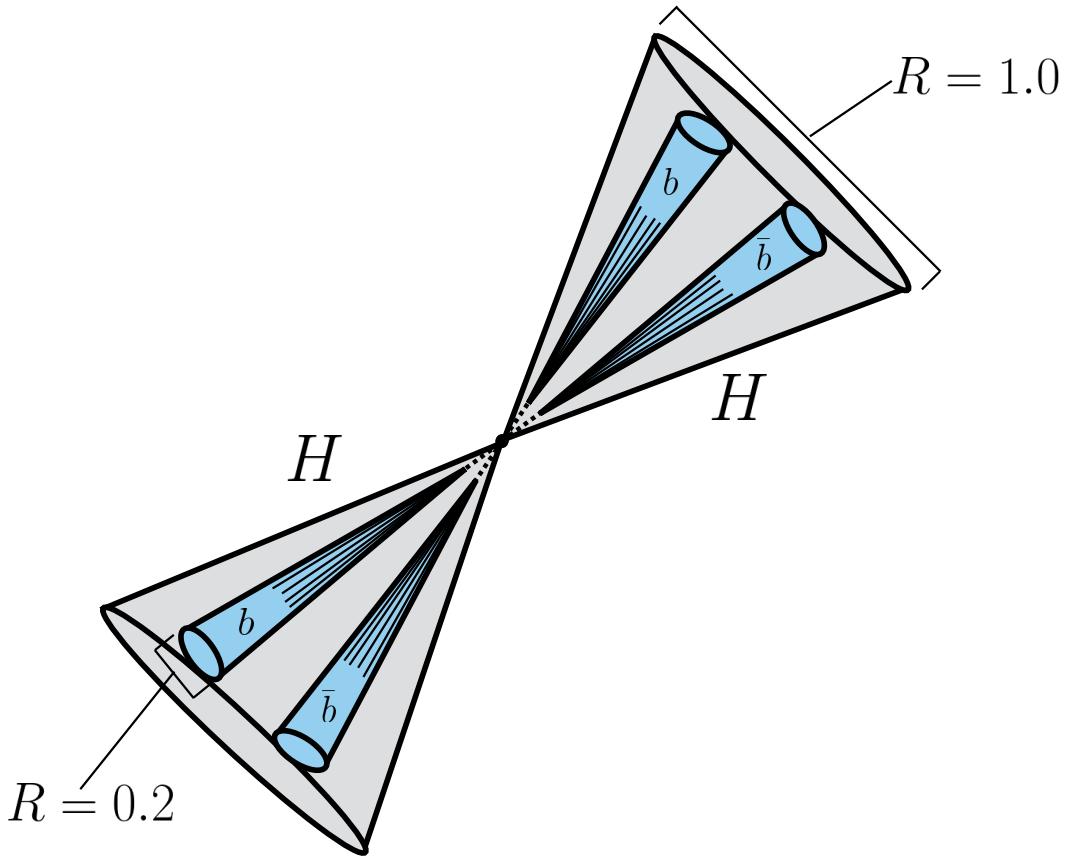


Figure 7.7: Illustration of the boosted selection requirements on Higgs candidates. Each large-radius calorimeter jet (Higgs candidate) must contain two track jets

²³²¹ Higgs candidate jets with the SM Higgs mass. This is shown in equation 7.2.

$$X_{hh} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{M_J^{\text{lead}} - 124 \text{ GeV}}{0.1 M_J^{\text{lead}}}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{M_J^{\text{sublead}} - 115 \text{ GeV}}{0.1 M_J^{\text{sublead}}}\right)^2} \quad (7.2)$$

²³²² The mass values in the X_{hh} formula are optimized to maximize signal efficiency. The sub-leading jet
²³²³ typically has a lower mass due to semi-leptonic b decays and final state radiation. X_{hh} effectively acts as
²³²⁴ a χ^2 measurement of the consistency of the two Higgs candidate masses with the signal hypothesis. The
²³²⁵ denominators of each term ($0.1 M$) give the uncertainty on the mass measurement for the large radius
²³²⁶ jets. Events are required to satisfy $X_{hh} < 1.6$.

²³²⁷ The last requirement applied is on the number of b -tagged track jets. There are two signal regions de-

fined. The first requires exactly four b -tagged track jets, two in each Higgs candidate (known as the 4 signal region). At high resonance masses, this requirement is inefficient, so an additional signal region requiring only three b -tagged track jets is also defined (known as the 3 b signal region). While this has a larger background it is also more efficient for high resonance masses. For both signal regions, threshold on MV2 score is chosen such that the algorithm is 77% efficiency in finding true b -jets[§]. Different working points were tested and this was found to be optimal. Appendix A has more details on this optimization.

Before making the requirement on X_{hh} , the masses of the Higgs candidates are corrected for semi-leptonic b decays using muons with the criteria outlined in the previous section. Any muons within a $\Delta R < 0.2$ of a b -tagged track jet have their four-momenta added to the four-momentum of the Higgs candidate. This correction does not affect the pre-selection requirements but does affect the X_{hh} requirement and the final invariant mass distribution used.

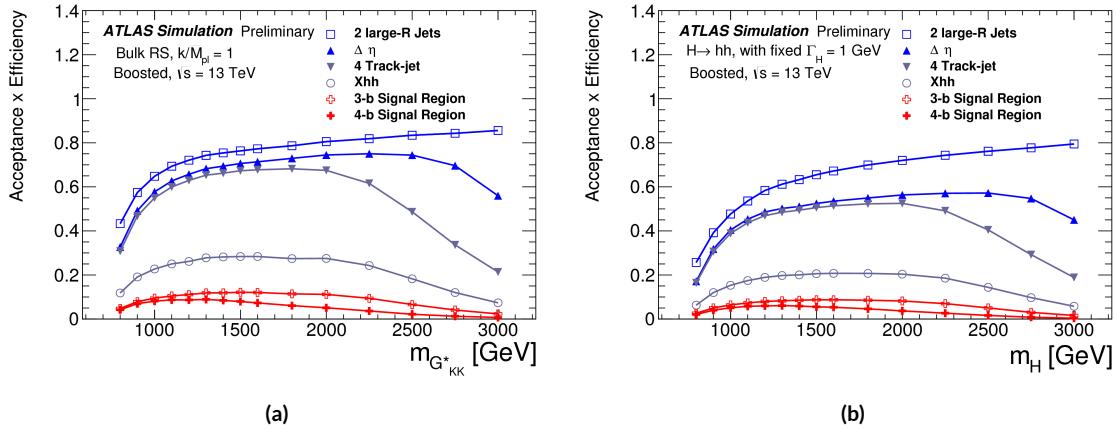


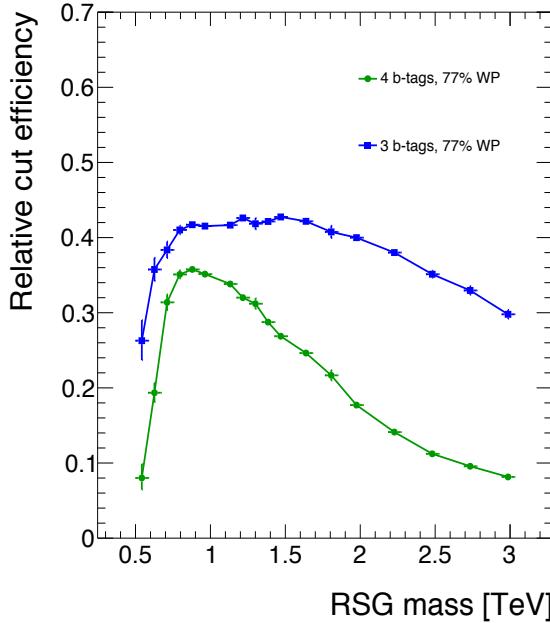
Figure 7.8: Acceptance \times efficiency as a function of mass for (a) RSG and (b) narrow heavy scalar signal models [28].

Figure 7.8 shows the product of acceptance and efficiency as a function of mass for both the RSG and narrow heavy scalar resonance signal models. After $m_X > 1$ TeV, the efficiency of the 4 b requirement begins to decline. After $m_X > 2$ TeV, the efficiency of requiring two track jets in each Higgs candidate begins to decline as well. Both of these behaviors illustrate the difficulty of resolving the merged decay

[§]The specific MV2 algorithm chosen is MV2c20, where the fraction of charm events used in the training is 20%

2344 products at high mass. More details on the degradation of the b -tagging efficiency at high masses are
2345 shown in appendix B.

2346 Figure 7.9 shows a more detailed comparison of the signal efficiency in the $3b$ vs $4b$ signal regions for
2347 the RSG model. The efficiencies shown here are relative to all prior selection requirements.



2348 **Figure 7.9:** Efficiency of requiring 3 or 4 b -tagged track jets vs. RSG mass. The efficiency quoted is relative to the previous
2349 selection requirements (rather than an absolute efficiency).

2348 The final discriminating variable used in the boosted analysis is M_{2J} , the invariant mass of the two
2349 Higgs candidates. In order to improve the mass resolution, the four-momenta of each Higgs candidate
2350 are scaled by m_h/M_J . The effect of this correction is small in the boosted analysis but is done for consis-
2351 tency with the resolved selection.

2352 Table 7.2 shows the effect of the selection requirements on signal and background simulations as well
2353 as data.

2354 7.6 DATA-DRIVEN BACKGROUND ESTIMATION

2355 The largest background to this final state is QCD multijet production, constituting 80-90% of the total
2356 background. Because of the difficulties in modeling higher order QCD processes, this background is

Selection	Data	$m_{G_{KK}^*} = 1\text{TeV}$	$m_{G_{KK}^*} = 2\text{TeV}$	$t\bar{t}$	$Z+\text{jets}$
N(fiducial large-R jets) ≥ 2	2202396	23.3	0.48	32345.2	4255.7
leading large-R jet $p_T > 350\text{ GeV}$	1873741	22.9	0.48	26511.7	3649.9
Both large-R jet $m > 50\text{ GeV}$	1854625	21.2	0.47	24369.8	3575.8
Both large-R jet $p_T < 1500\text{ GeV}$	1853601	21.2	0.46	24346.5	3572.9
$ \Delta\eta(JJ) < 1.7$	1435273	20.8	0.44	20751.0	3265.8
≥ 2 track-jets per large-R jet	1224727	19.8	0.40	18234.5	2692.6
$3 b\text{-tags}, X_{hh} < 1.6$	316	3.4	0.067	46.7	2.0
$4 b\text{-tags}, X_{hh} < 1.6$	20	2.9	0.030	1.4	0.0

Table 7.2: Effect of boosted selection on data, RSG signal models, $t\bar{t}$, and $Z+\text{jets}$. The numbers from simulation are normalized with the MC generator cross section and do not take into account the data driven estimates described in section 7.6 [33].

estimated with a fully data-driven method. The only other non-negligible background is $t\bar{t}$, constituting the other 10-20%*. Due to the presence of $t\bar{t}$ in the sideband region where the QCD background will be estimated, the normalization of the QCD and $t\bar{t}$ backgrounds are simultaneously estimated.

7.6.1 MASS REGION DEFINITIONS

The first step in the data-driven background estimate is to define a sideband mass region where the background normalization can be derived. Additionally, a control region is defined where the background estimate can be validated. The control (CR) and sideband (SB) regions are defined using a radial distance in the two-dimensional large-R jet mass plane, R_{hh} , which is defined in equation 7.3.

$$R_{hh} = \sqrt{(M_J^{\text{lead}} - 124\text{ GeV})^2 + (M_J^{\text{sublead}} - 115\text{ GeV})^2} \quad (7.3)$$

Events in the sideband region are required to fail the signal region $X_{hh} < 1.6$ requirement and have $R_{hh} > 35.8\text{ GeV}$. The control region consists of those events which are not in the signal or sideband regions. Figure 7.10 shows the definition of the signal, control, and sideband mass regions.

Table 7.3 summarizes the mass region selections for the three different regions used in the analysis.

*The $Z+\text{jets}$ background is a sub-percent level contribution

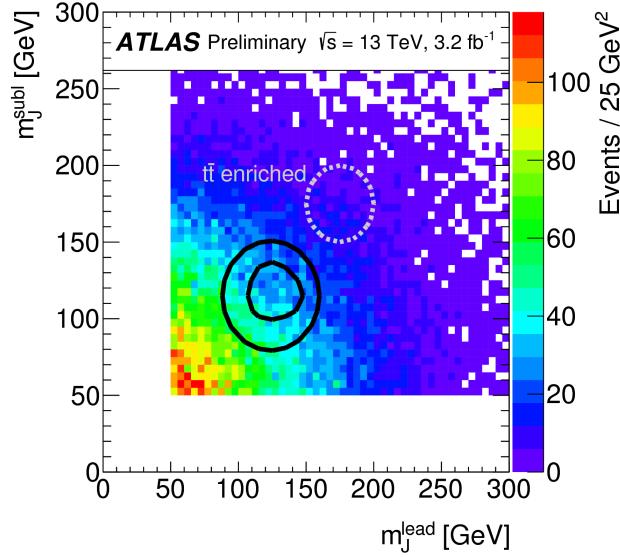


Figure 7.10: M_J^{sublead} vs. M_J^{lead} in a 2 b -tag data sample. The signal region is defined by the inner black contour ($X_{hh} < 1.6$) and the sideband region is defined by the outer contour ($R_{hh} > 35.8 \text{ GeV}$). The region between the black contours is the control region. The mass region which is enriched in $t\bar{t}$ background is also shown for illustration. [28]

Region	Requirement	Notes
Signal Region (SR)	$X_{hh} < 1.6$	-
Control Region (CR)	$R_{hh} < 35.8 \text{ GeV}$ and $X_{hh} > 1.6$	Used for validation of background estimates
Sideband Region (SB)	$R_{hh} > 35.8 \text{ GeV}$	Used to derive background normalization

Table 7.3: Mass region definitions used for background estimation

2369 7.6.2 BACKGROUND ESTIMATION

2370 The method for estimating the background in this analysis is similar to the ABCD method presented in
 2371 Chapter 5. In this case, the two handles used to define different regions for the estimate are the number
 2372 of b -tagged track jets and the mass regions. A region requiring exactly two b -tagged track jets in one large-
 2373 R jet (referred to as the 2-tag or 2 b region) is defined for use in the background estimate. The number of
 2374 expected background events in the 3 b and 4 b signal regions is then given by equation 7.4.

$$N_{\text{bkg}}^{3(4)-\text{tag},\text{SR}} = \mu_{\text{Multijet}} N_{\text{Multijet}}^{2-\text{tag},\text{SR}} + \beta_{t\bar{t}} N_{t\bar{t}}^{3(4)-\text{tag},\text{SR}} + N_{Z+\text{jets}}^{3(4)-\text{tag},\text{SR}} \quad (7.4)$$

2375 In this equation, $N_{\text{bkg}}^{3(4)\text{-tag}}$ is the expected number of background events in the $3b$ or $4b$ signal re-
 2376 gions. $N_{\text{Multijet}}^{2\text{-tag}}$ is the number of multijet events in the 2-tag region. $N_{t\bar{t}}^{3(4)\text{-tag}}$ is the number of $t\bar{t}$
 2377 events predicted in the MC for the $3b$ or $4b$ signal region, and the variable is similarly defined for the
 2378 $Z+\text{jets}$ background. The $\beta_{t\bar{t}}$ parameter is a scale factor used to correct the normalization of the $t\bar{t}$ esti-
 2379 mate in the signal region. μ_{Multijet} is an extrapolation factor that is derived in the sideband region and
 2380 used to estimate the ratio of 2-tag events to 3(4)-tag events in the signal region. It is defined in equa-
 2381 tion 7.5.

$$\mu_{\text{Multijet}} = \frac{N_{\text{Multijet}}^{3(4)\text{-tag,SB}}}{N_{\text{Multijet}}^{2\text{-tag,SB}}} = \frac{N_{\text{data}}^{3(4)\text{-tag,SB}} - \beta_{t\bar{t}} N_{t\bar{t}}^{3(4)\text{-tag,SB}} - N_{Z+\text{jets}}^{3(4)\text{-tag,SB}}}{N_{\text{data}}^{2\text{-tag,SB}} - \beta_{t\bar{t}} N_{t\bar{t}}^{2\text{-tag,SB}} - N_{Z+\text{jets}}^{2\text{-tag,SB}}} \quad (7.5)$$

2382 The $t\bar{t}$ scale factor ($\beta_{t\bar{t}}$) and the QCD multijet extrapolation factor (μ_{Multijet}) are estimated together
 2383 in a simultaneous fit in the sideband region. Then, the number of events in the 2-tag signal region is
 2384 used, along with the $t\bar{t}$ estimate in the $3b$ and $4b$ signal regions and μ_{Multijet} , to estimate the total num-
 2385 ber of background events in the two final signal regions. The shape of the final discriminant M_{2J} is also
 2386 taken from the 2-tag signal region where there are more statistics. This method is illustrated graphically
 2387 in figure 7.11.

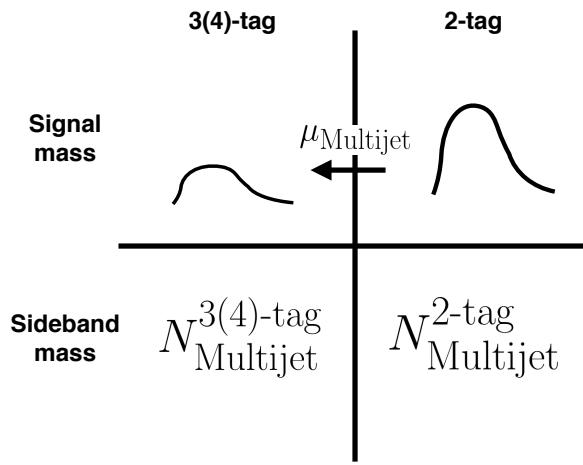


Figure 7.11: An illustration of the data-driven background estimation technique for the boosted analysis

2388 In the $3b$ region, the fit yields values of $\mu_{\text{Multijet}} = 0.160 \pm 0.03$ and $\beta_{t\bar{t}} = 1.02 \pm 0.09$. In the $4b$

region, the fit gives $\mu_{\text{Multijet}} = 0.0091 \pm 0.0007$ and $\beta_{t\bar{t}} = 0.82 \pm 0.39$. The uncertainties quoted are statistical only. The larger uncertainties in the $4b$ values indicate the lower statistics available in that region.

Figure 7.12 shows the distributions of data and background estimates in the $3b$ and $4b$ sideband regions after the background fit has been done. The normalizations are constrained from the fit to match that of the data, but good modeling of the shape of the mass of the leading large-R jet is seen as well. The shapes of the kinematic distributions in the $4b$ region are taken from the $3b$ region due to the better MC statistics in that region.

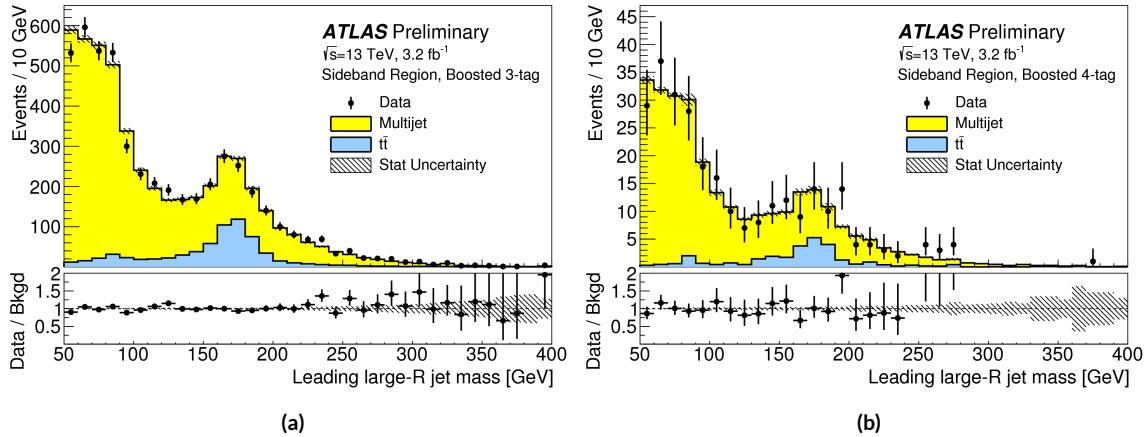


Figure 7.12: Leading large-R jet mass in the $3b$ (a) and $4b$ (b) sideband regions. The multijet and $t\bar{t}$ backgrounds are estimated using the data-driven methods described above. Because their normalizations are derived in the sideband region, the total background normalization is constrained by default to match the normalization of the data [28].

7.6.3 BACKGROUND SHAPE FIT

As mentioned in the previous section, the background shape in the 3-tag and 4-tag signal regions is taken from the 2-tag signal mass region. Due to the limited statistics available, the background shapes are additionally smoothed after being extrapolated to the 3-tag and 4-tag signal regions. Only the data in the range $900 < M_{2J} < 2000$ GeV is included in the fit due to the limited statistics available above 2 TeV. Both the $t\bar{t}$ and QCD multijet background are independently fit with an exponential shape, $y = e^{ax+b}$. Other shapes are considered and used for the systematic uncertainties. Table 7.4 shows the fit values for

the parameters. Because both the $3b$ and $4b$ QCD shapes come from the 2-tag region, the slopes derived are very similar.

	a	b
QCD ($4b$)	0.00545 ± 0.00021	5.44 ± 0.24
$t\bar{t}$ ($4b$)	0.00746 ± 0.00021	4.88 ± 0.36
QCD ($3b$)	0.00545 ± 0.00021	8.30 ± 0.24
$t\bar{t}$ ($3b$)	0.00746 ± 0.00021	8.58 ± 0.36

Table 7.4: Parameters derived for exponential fit to background M_{2J} shape in the $3b$ and $4b$ signal regions [33]

7.6.4 VALIDATION OF BACKGROUND ESTIMATE

The background estimate can be validated by using the method to estimate the number of events in the control mass region rather than the signal mass region. Figure 7.13 shows the M_{2J} distribution in the $3b$ and $4b$ control regions, comparing data and background estimates. In both cases, both the background shape and normalization are consistent with the data, indicating good agreement. The ratio of data to the background estimates is also fit to a line in the figure to test for any shape difference. The slope of the line is within 1σ (from the fit uncertainties) of flat, further indicating that the data is consistent with the background estimate in the control region.

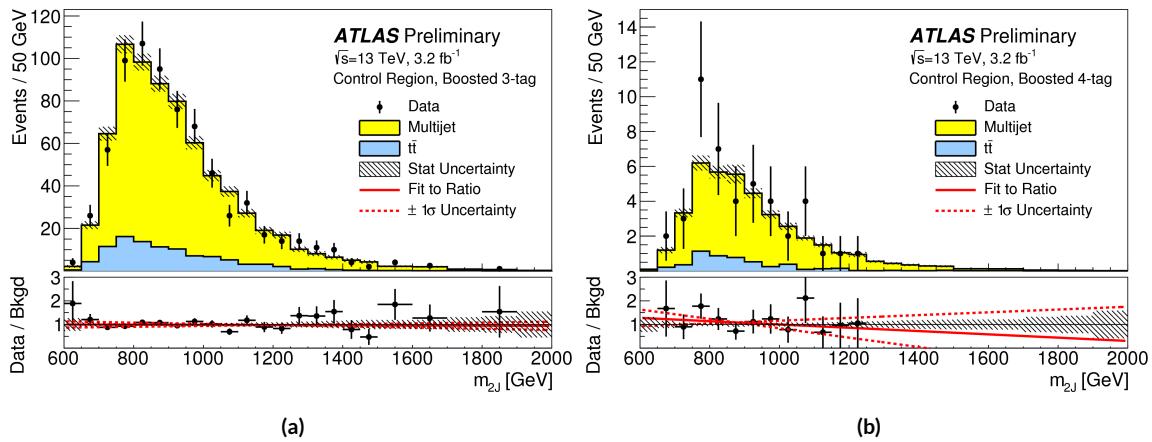


Figure 7.13: Di-jet invariant mass (M_{2J}) in the $3b$ (a) and $4b$ (b) control regions. The multijet and $t\bar{t}$ backgrounds are estimated using the data-driven methods described above [28].

Table 7.5 shows the yields in data and background estimates in the 3-tag and 4-tag sideband and con-

²⁴¹⁵ trol regions. Again, here, it can be seen that the total number of predicted background events from the
²⁴¹⁶ data driven method is consistent with the number of data events in the region.

Sample (3-tag)	Sideband Region	Control Region
Multijet	4328 ± 27	607 ± 10
$t\bar{t}$	683.5 ± 8.1	99.6 ± 3.1
$Z+jets$	31.8 ± 3.7	7.7 ± 1.8
Total	5043 ± 28	715 ± 11
Data	5043	724
Sample (4-tag)	Sideband Region	Control Region
Multijet	247.4 ± 1.5	34.7 ± 0.6
$t\bar{t}$	28.4 ± 1.5	5.1 ± 0.7
$Z+jets$	3.4 ± 1.2	0.6 ± 0.5
Total	279.2 ± 2.5	40.3 ± 1.0
Data	279	45

Table 7.5: The number of events in data and predicted background events in the boosted 3-tag and 4-tag sideband and control regions. The uncertainties shown are statistical only.^[28]

²⁴¹⁷ 7.7 SYSTEMATIC UNCERTAINTIES

²⁴¹⁸ The systematic uncertainties in this analysis can be divided into two broad categories. The first type is
²⁴¹⁹ uncertainties associated with the modeling of the signal processes. The second type of uncertainty is
²⁴²⁰ associated with both the shape and normalization of the background prediction.

²⁴²¹ 7.7.1 SIGNAL MODELING UNCERTAINTIES

²⁴²² The signal modeling uncertainty has three main components: theoretical uncertainty on the acceptance,
²⁴²³ experimental uncertainties on the large-R jets, and experimental uncertainties on the track jets related to
²⁴²⁴ b -tagging. In this analysis the experimental uncertainties are the most significant.

²⁴²⁵ The first uncertainty on signal modeling is the theoretical uncertainty on the acceptance. As explained
²⁴²⁶ in section 5.6.1, there are four components to this uncertainty. The first is related to missing higher order
²⁴²⁷ terms from the matrix element calculations which is estimated by varying the QCD renormalization and

2428 factorization scales. The second is uncertainty due to the PDF set used. The third is a generator uncer-
2429 tainty which is estimated by modifying the generator used to model the underlying event and hadroniza-
2430 tion. Finally, there is an uncertainty associated with the modeling of the initial state and final state radia-
2431 tion (ISR/FSR). The total theoretical uncertainty on the signal yield is 3%, and this is dominated by the
2432 ISR/FSR modeling.

2433 There are uncertainties on the large-R jets in both the jet energy scale (JES) and jet energy resolution
2434 (JER) as well as the jet mass scale (JMS) and jet mass resolution (JMR). These are evaluated using $\sqrt{s} =$
2435 8 TeV data from Run 1 of ATLAS and extrapolated to the Run 2 beam and detector conditions using
2436 MC[¶]. The details of these uncertainties can be found in reference [104].

2437 Uncertainties on the track jets are related to the b -tagging efficiency. The total uncertainty on the sig-
2438 nal yield due to b -tagging is evaluated by propagating variations of the b -tagging efficiency through the
2439 boosted selection requirements. The uncertainties are calculated jet-by-jet and parameterized as a func-
2440 tion of b -jet p_T and η [105]. For high p_T b -jets (with $p_T > 300$ GeV), the uncertainties are extrapolated
2441 using MC simulation from the lower p_T b -jets [106].

2442 Table 7.6 shows the systematic uncertainties on the signal normalization for models with $m_{G_{KK}^*} =$
2443 1.5 TeV and both $c = 1$ and $c = 2$ as well as a narrow width heavy scalar. The dominant uncertainty
2444 comes from b -tagging and this uncertainty is larger in the 4-tag region than the 3-tag region.

2445 7.7.2 BACKGROUND UNCERTAINTIES

2446 Uncertainties on the QCD multijet background normalization and shape are estimated using the control
2447 mass region. As shown previously, the background predictions in the control region match with the
2448 data yields within the statistical uncertainty in both the 3-tag and 4-tag control regions. As an additional
2449 protection, the statistical uncertainty on the background prediction in the control region is assigned as a
2450 systematic uncertainty on the normalization of the QCD background.

2451 Additional robustness tests are done by varying the definition of the control mass region and the b -
2452 tagging requirements used to define the 2-tag sample. In all cases, the effect of the variations is found to

[¶]The uncertainties are correspondingly larger due to the uncertainty of this extrapolation.

Source	Background		G_{KK}^*	H
	$c = 1$	$c = 2$		
Luminosity	-	5.0	5.0	5.0
3-tag				
JER	< 1	< 1	< 1	< 1
JES	2	< 1	< 1	< 1
JMR	1	12	12	11
JMS	5	14	13	17
b -tagging	1	23	22	23
Theoretical	-	3	3	3
Multijet Normalization	3	-	-	-
Statistical	2	1	1	1
Total	7	31	30	33
4-tag				
JER	< 1	< 1	< 1	< 1
JES	< 1	< 1	< 1	< 1
JMR	4	12	13	13
JMS	5	13	13	14
b -tagging	2	36	36	36
Theoretical	-	3	3	3
Multijet Normalization	14	-	-	-
Statistical	3	1	1	1
Total	15	42	42	43

Table 7.6: Summary of systematic uncertainties in the total background and signal event yields (expressed in %) in the boosted 3-tag and 4-tag signal regions. Systematic uncertainties on the signal normalization are shown for models with $m_{G_{KK}^*} = 1.5$ TeV and both $c = 1$ and $c = 2$ as well as a narrow width heavy scalar.

2453 be within the statistical uncertainties on the background normalization in the control region.

2454 Shape uncertainties on the background are evaluated using two techniques. First, as shown in figure 7.13, the ratio between the data and background prediction is fit with a linear function. The uncertainties on the slope of this fit are assigned as shape uncertainties. An additional uncertainty is assigned by using alternate power law fit functions for the smoothing of the background shape. Table 7.7 shows the alternate shapes used. The largest difference between the nominal fit function and the alternates, taking into account the 1σ uncertainty band on each fit as well, is taken as a shape uncertainty.

Functional Form
$f_1(x) = p_0(1-x)^{p_1}x^{p_2}$
$f_2(x) = p_0(1-x)^{p_1}e^{p_2 x^2}$
$f_3(x) = p_0(1-x)^{p_1}x^{p_2} x$
$f_4(x) = p_0(1-x)^{p_1}x^{p_2} \ln x$
$f_5(x) = p_0(1-x)^{p_1}(1+x)^{p_2} x$
$f_6(x) = p_0(1-x)^{p_1}(1+x)^{p_2} \ln x$
$f_7(x) = \frac{p_0}{x}(1-x)^{p_1-p_2} \ln x$
$f_8(x) = \frac{p_0}{x^2}(1-x)^{p_1-p_2} \ln x$

Table 7.7: Alternate fit functions used to model the M_{JJ} distribution in the QCD multijet background. In the equations, $x = M_{JJ}/\sqrt{s}$.

2460 The uncertainties on the $t\bar{t}$ background are obtained by propagating the various experimental varia-
 2461 tions (JES, JER, JMS, JMR, b -tagging) through the analysis selection requirements. Table 7.6 summarizes
 2462 the background uncertainties in the 3-tag and 4-tag regions.

2463 **7.8 RESULTS**

2464 Table 7.8 shows the observed yields in the 3-tag and 4-tag signal regions for the boosted analysis com-
 2465 pared to the predicted number of background events. In the 3-tag region, 316 events are observed with
 2466 a predicted background of 285 ± 19 . In the 4-tag region, 20 events are observed with a predicted back-
 2467 ground of 14.6 ± 2.4 . Figure 7.14 shows the M_{JJ} distribution in the 3-tag and 4-tag regions. There are
 2468 some small excesses in the data, in particular in the 3-tag region around $M_{JJ} \approx 900$ GeV and in the
 2469 region of $1.6 < M_{JJ} < 2.0$ TeV. The significance of these excesses will be evaluated in the next chapter
 2470 in the statistical combination with the resolved results.

Sample	Signal Region (3-tag)	Signal Region (4-tag)
Multijet	235 ± 14	13.5 ± 2.4
$t\bar{t}$	48 ± 22	1.2 ± 1.0
$Z+jets$	2.0 ± 2.2	-
Total	285 ± 19	14.6 ± 2.4
Data	316	20
$G_{KK}^*(1000 \text{ GeV}), c = 1$	3.4 ± 0.9	2.9 ± 1.1

Table 7.8: Observed yields in the 3-tag and 4-tag signal regions for the boosted analysis compared to the predicted number of background events Errors correspond to the total uncertainties in the predicted event yields. The yields for a graviton with $m_{G_{KK}^*} = 1 \text{ TeV}$ and $c = 1$ are also shown. [28]

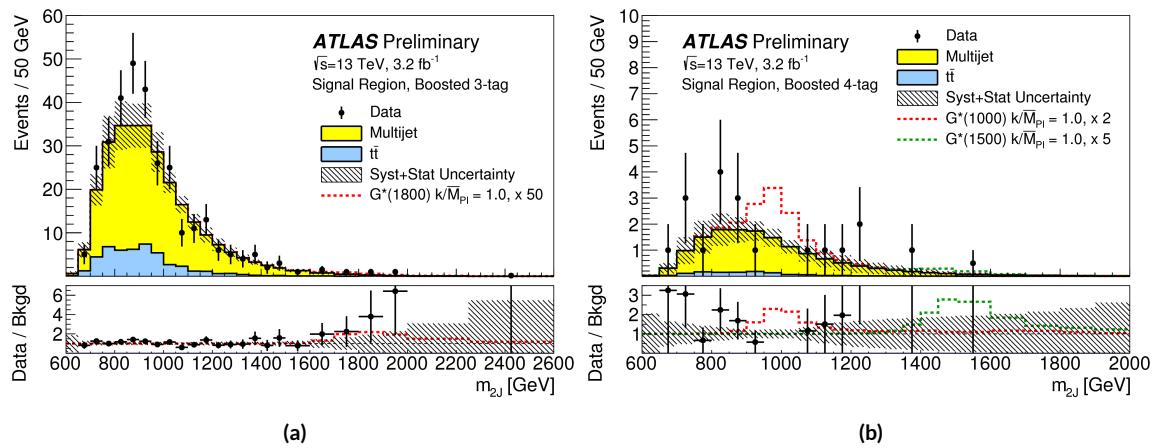


Figure 7.14: Di-jet invariant mass (M_{2J}) in the $3b$ (a) and $4b$ (b) signal regions. The multijet and $t\bar{t}$ backgrounds are estimated using the data-driven methods described above. In the $3b$ region, a graviton signal with $m_{G_{KK}^*} = 1.8 \text{ TeV}$ and $c = 1$ is overlaid, with the cross section multiplied by a factor of 50 so that the signal is visible. In the $4b$ region, signals with $m_{G_{KK}^*} = 1.0 \text{ TeV}$ and $m_{G_{KK}^*} = 1.5 \text{ TeV}$ are overlaid, both with $c = 1$ and the yields multiplied by factors of 2 and 5 respectively [28].

This is a really enlightening quote.

Tomo Lazovich

8

2471

2472

Combined limits from boosted and resolved searches

2473

2474

8.1 INTRODUCTION

2475 In order to cover the full mass range of possible resonances decaying to di-Higgs final states, two distinct
2476 tailored selections were produced. The resolved selection is more sensitive in the mass range of $400 <$
2477 $m_X < 1100$ GeV while the boosted selection is more sensitive to masses in the range $1100 < m_X <$
2478 3000 GeV. Chapter 7 presents the details of the boosted selection and results. In setting limits on spin-2
2479 Randall-Sundrum graviton (RSG) and narrow width heavy scalar (H) models, the results of the boosted
2480 selection are combined with the results of the resolved selection to cover the full mass range.

2481 This chapter presents limits on signal models resulting from the $X \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ search in both
2482 the resolved and boosted selections. It first presents a brief overview of the resolved results that go into

2483 the limit setting. Then, an overview of the statistical methods used for the search and limit setting is
2484 given. Finally, limits on the RSG and heavy scalar models are presented.

2485 **8.2 RESOLVED RESULTS**

2486 The details of the resolved selection will not be presented here and can be found in reference [28]. In
2487 basic terms, the selection searches for four $R = 0.4$ b-tagged calorimeter jets (where each pair of jets is
2488 one Higgs candidate). This is distinct from the boosted methodology which searches for merged decay
2489 products. The backgrounds to the resolved selection are the same as those presented in Chapter 7 for the
2490 boosted analysis.

2491 Table 8.1 shows the results for data yields and expected background in the resolved signal region. Fig-
2492 ure 8.1 shows the M_{2J} distribution in the resolved signal region. The total number of events is consis-
2493 tent with the prediction and no significant excess is seen. One event in the boosted 4-tag signal is shared
2494 with the resolved signal region and has a mass of 852 GeV.

Sample	Signal Region Yield
Multijet	43.3 ± 2.3
$t\bar{t}$	4.3 ± 3.0
$Z + \text{jets}$	-
Total	47.6 ± 3.8
Data	46
SM hh	0.25 ± 0.07
$G_{\text{KK}}^*(800 \text{ GeV}), c = 1$	5.7 ± 1.5

Table 8.1: Observed yields in the resolve selection 4-tag signal region compared to the predicted number of background events Errors correspond to the total uncertainties in the predicted event yields. The yields for a graviton with $m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} = 800 \text{ GeV}$ and $c = 1$ are also shown. [28]

2495 **8.3 SEARCH TECHNIQUE AND RESULTS**

2496 The statistical technique used for the search in this analysis is the same as that used in the $H \rightarrow WW^*$
2497 analysis presented in section 3.6.2. The test statistic q_0 is used to define the p -values which measure the

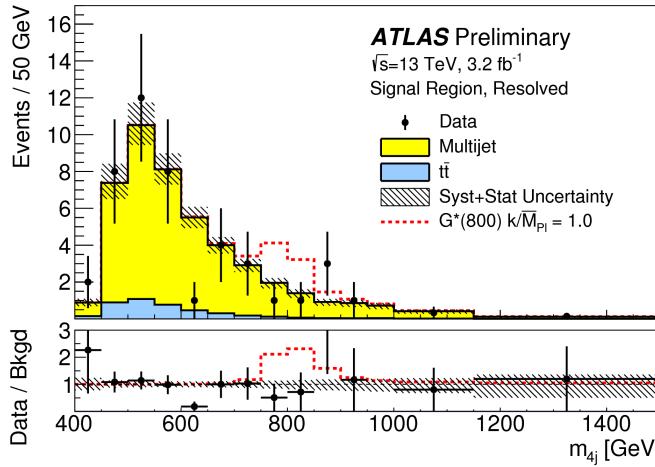


Figure 8.1: Di-jet invariant mass (M_{2J}) in the resolved signal region. Agraviton signal with $m_{G^*_\text{KK}} = 800 \text{ GeV}$ and $c = 1$ is overlaid. [28].

compatibility of the data with the background-only hypothesis corresponding to a signal strength $\mu = 0$.

Local p_0 values are computed to quantify the probability that the background could produce a fluctuation greater than or equal to the one observed in the data. In the resolved analysis, no significant excesses are observed. The largest discrepancy with respect to the background only hypothesis occurs near a resonance mass of 900 GeV and is found to be less than 2σ in significance.

In the boosted selection, the largest local excess is a broad excess in the $3b$ signal region that begins near $M_{2J} \approx 1.7 \text{ GeV}$. Assuming a G^*_KK with this mass and $c = 1.0$, the local significance of this excess is 2.0σ .

8.4 LIMIT SETTING

In the absence of any significant excess observed in the data, limits on different signal models can be set. This section describes the limit setting procedure and presents combined results of the resolved and boosted analyses.

2511 8.4.1 LIMIT SETTING PROCEDURE

2512 The procedure used for setting exclusion limits in this analysis is the CL_s method [107]. The first step in
 2513 setting the limits is to define a test statistic which will be used. For limit setting, the test statistic is shown
 2514 in equation 8.1.

$$\tilde{q}_\mu = \begin{cases} -2 \ln \frac{L(\mu, \hat{\theta}(\mu))}{L(0, \hat{\theta}(0))} & \hat{\mu} < 0 \\ -2 \ln \frac{L(\mu, \hat{\theta}(\mu))}{L(\hat{\mu}, \hat{\theta})} & 0 \leq \hat{\mu} < \mu \\ 0 & \hat{\mu} > \mu \end{cases} \quad (8.1)$$

2515 In the above equation, μ is the value of the signal strength under test, $\hat{\mu}$ is the best fit μ , $\hat{\theta}$ is the
 2516 best fit value of the nuisance parameters, $\hat{\theta}$ is the best fit value of the nuisance parameters under the fixed
 2517 μ value, and L is the Poisson likelihood of the data (as described in section 3.6.2).

2518 The test statistic \tilde{q}_μ is constructed to protect against two interesting corner cases when setting the
 2519 upper limit on the cross section. First, it protects against negative signal strengths μ which are unphys-
 2520 ical. Second, it does not count excesses in the data larger than those expected by a signal strength μ as
 2521 evidence against the μ hypothesis.

2522 The CL_s statistic is constructed by taking a ratio of two probabilities. CL_{s+b} is the probability that
 2523 the signal+background hypothesis would produce a value of the test statistic that is less than or equal
 2524 to the observed value*. CL_b is the probability that the background only hypothesis will pro-
 2525 duce a value of the test statistics less than or equal to the observed. The CL_s statistic is then the ratio
 2526 $\text{CL}_{s+b}/\text{CL}_b$. A 95% upper limit on the cross section is set at the value of μ that makes the CL_s statistic
 2527 less than 5%.

2528 In practice, the limits are computed numerically within an asymptotic approximation for the distri-
 2529 bution of the test statistic \tilde{q}_μ . The details of this approximation can be found in reference [70].

2530 The resolved and boosted analyses are combined using a very simple procedure rather than a full sta-
 2531 tistical combination. For each mass point tested, the limit which gives the most stringent constraint is

*Lower values of \tilde{q}_μ mean better compatibility

used. This means that for mass points below 1.1 TeV the resolved signal region is used, while at and above this point the combination of the orthogonal $3b$ and $4b$ boosted signal regions is used.

8.4.2 LIMIT SETTING RESULTS

Figure 8.2 shows the combined 95% upper bounds as a function of mass for three different models: G_{KK}^* with $c = 1$, G_{KK}^* with $c = 2$, and a narrow heavy scalar H .

The cross section of $\sigma(pp \rightarrow G_{\text{KK}}^* \rightarrow hh \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b})$ with $c = 1$ is constrained to be less than 70 fb for masses in the range $600 < m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} < 3000$ GeV. For the RSG model with $c = 2$, cross sections limits between 40 fb and 200 fb are set for the mass range of $500 < m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} < 3000$ GeV. Masses in the range of $475 < m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} < 785$ GeV are excluded with $c = 1$ (with an exclusion of the range 465 to 745 GeV expected). Masses less than 980 GeV are excluded with $c = 2$ (with an exclusion for masses less than 1 TeV expected).

In the heavy Higgs model, the cross section upper limits for $\sigma(pp \rightarrow H \rightarrow hh \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b})$ ranges from 30 to 300 fb in the mass range of $500 < m_H < 3000$ GeV.

The resolved analysis can also set an upper limit on the Standard Model di-Higgs production cross section discussed in chapter 3. The upper limit on $\sigma(pp \rightarrow hh \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b})$ in the Standard Model is constrained to be less than 1.22 pb.

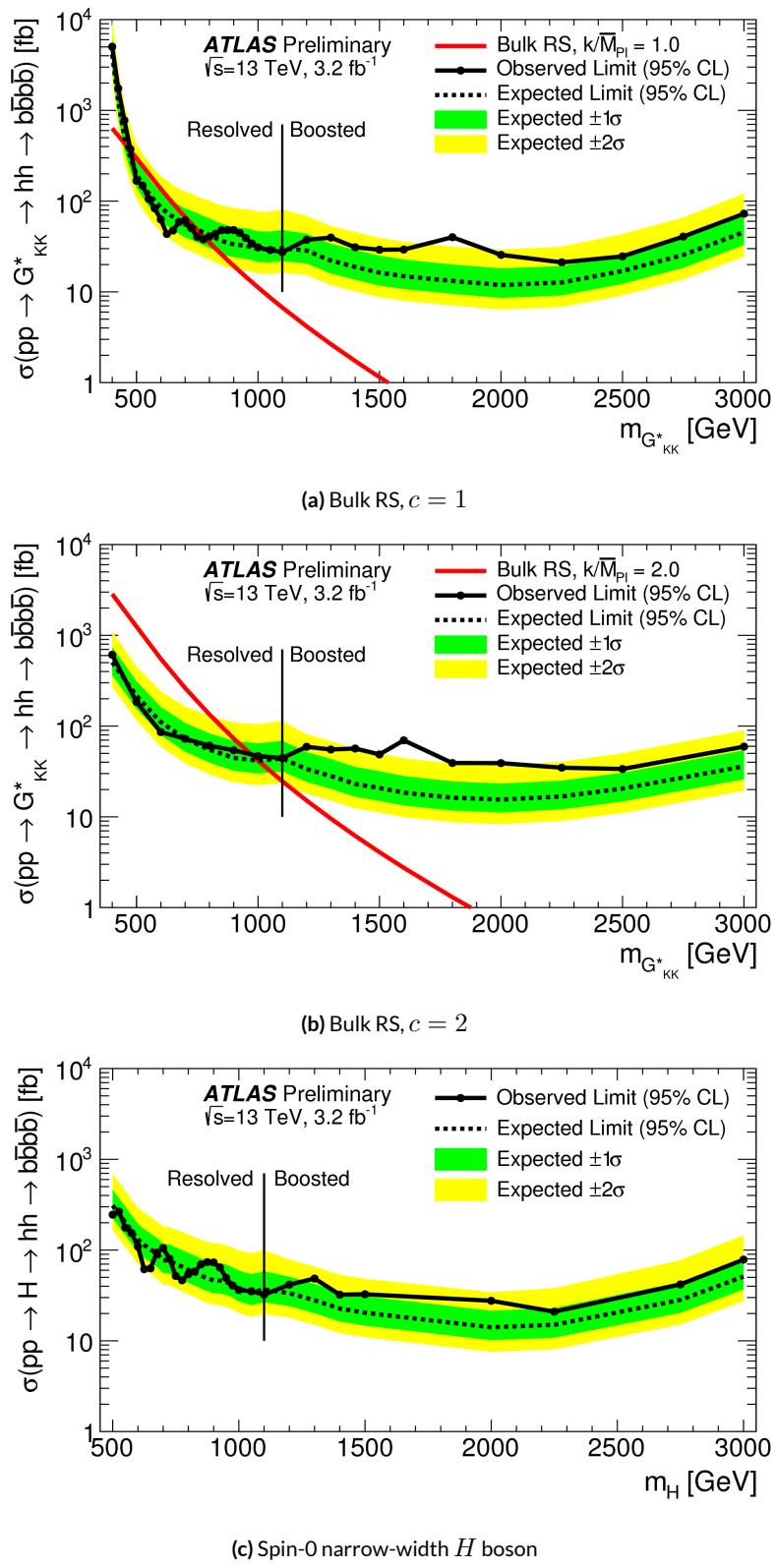


Figure 8.2: Expected and observed upper limit as a function of mass for G^*_{KK} in the RSG model with (a) $c = 1$ and (b) $c = 2$, as well as (c) H with fixed $\Gamma_H = 1$ GeV, at the 95% confidence level in the CL_s method. [28]

2548

Part IV

2549

Looking ahead

9

2550

Conclusion

2551

2552 This dissertation presented two distinct studies: the observation and measurement of the Higgs boson
2553 in the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$ channel at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV and $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV and a search for Higgs pair
2554 production in the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector in pp collisions at
2555 the Large Hadron Collider.

2556 In the $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$, results from both the discovery of the Higgs boson and the full
2557 ATLAS Run 1 dataset were presented. With the full 20.3 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV and 4.2 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} =$
2558 7 TeV, ATLAS achieved discovery level significance in the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ channel alone and obtained
2559 the first observation of vector boson fusion production in that channel. The combined signal strength
2560 is measured to be $\mu = 1.09^{+0.23}_{-0.21}$. The total observed significance of the $H \rightarrow WW^*$ process is ob-
2561 served to be 6.1σ (with 5.8σ expected). Advanced methods for background reduction and estimation,
2562 particularly in same-flavor lepton final states, are shown. The VBF signal strength is measured to be
2563 $\mu_{\text{VBF}} = 1.27^{+0.53}_{-0.45}$ with an observed significance of 3.2σ (with 2.7σ expected).

2564 These results required many novel innovations. The increase of pileup interactions in the higher in-
2565 stantaneous luminosity LHC conditions of 2012 led to a degradation of missing transverse momentum
2566 resolution. As a result, the prominent Z/γ^* +jets background of the same flavor $H \rightarrow WW^* \rightarrow \ell\nu\ell\nu$
2567 final states increased greatly. New variables, including a track-based missing transverse momentum and
2568 a measurement of the balance between the dilepton system and recoiling jets, allowed for significant re-
2569 duction of this background. In the VBF channel, selections were optimized to exploit the unique VBF
2570 final state topology. Incorporating these variables into a boosted decision tree technique allowed the
2571 analysis to exceed the 3σ observation threshold.

2572 At $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV, a search for Higgs pair production in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state with 3.2 fb^{-1} was con-
2573 ducted. A signal region optimized for the boosted final states arising from high mass resonances was
2574 constructed. This signal region utilized large-radius calorimeter jets and b -tagging with small radius track
2575 jets to maximize the signal acceptance. No significant excesses were observed, and upper limits on cross
2576 sections are placed for spin-2 Randall Sundrum gravitons (RSG) and narrow spin-0 resonances. The
2577 cross section of $\sigma(pp \rightarrow G_{\text{KK}}^* \rightarrow hh \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b})$ with $k/\bar{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ is constrained to be less than 70 fb for
2578 masses in the range $600 < m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} < 3000 \text{ GeV}$. For the RSG model with $k/\bar{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 2$, cross sections
2579 limits between 40 fb and 200 fb are set for the mass range of $500 < m_{G_{\text{KK}}^*} < 3000 \text{ GeV}$. The cross
2580 section upper limits for $\sigma(pp \rightarrow H \rightarrow hh \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b})$ ranges from 30 to 300 fb in the mass range of
2581 $500 < m_H < 3000 \text{ GeV}$.

A

2582

2583

Optimization of b -tagging working point in

2584

$$X \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b} \text{ search}$$

2585 To the $3b$ and $4b$ signal regions in the boosted $X \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ search, the MV₂ algorithm with a
2586 20% fraction of charm events in training is used (MV_{2c20}). Once the algorith is selected, an efficiency
2587 working point must also be chosen. This working point defines the efficiency with which true b -jets
2588 are tagged and also fixes the overall background rejection of the algorithm. Higher efficiency working
2589 points accept more true b -jets but also allow for more background. Five different working points (70%,
2590 77%, 80%, 85%, 90%) are tested. With each working point, the full data driven background estimation
2591 method is run to quantify the amount of background that will be present in the final signal region. The
2592 significance is quantified using the median discovery significance for signal and background with Poisson

2593 errors, given in equation A.1 [108].

$$Z = \sqrt{2 \left((s + b) \ln \left(1 + \frac{s}{b} \right) - s \right)} \quad (\text{A.1})$$

2594 Note that in the limit where s is much smaller than b , this equation reduces to the more well known
 2595 s/\sqrt{b} .

2596 Figure A.1 shows the estimated significance as a function of signal mass in RSG $c = 1$ models for
 2597 the $3b$ and $4b$ signal regions. The 77% working point gives the best performance over a wide range of
 2598 masses in the $4b$ signal region. As this is the region which contributes the most to the total discovery
 2599 significance, the 77% efficiency working point is chosen for the analysis.

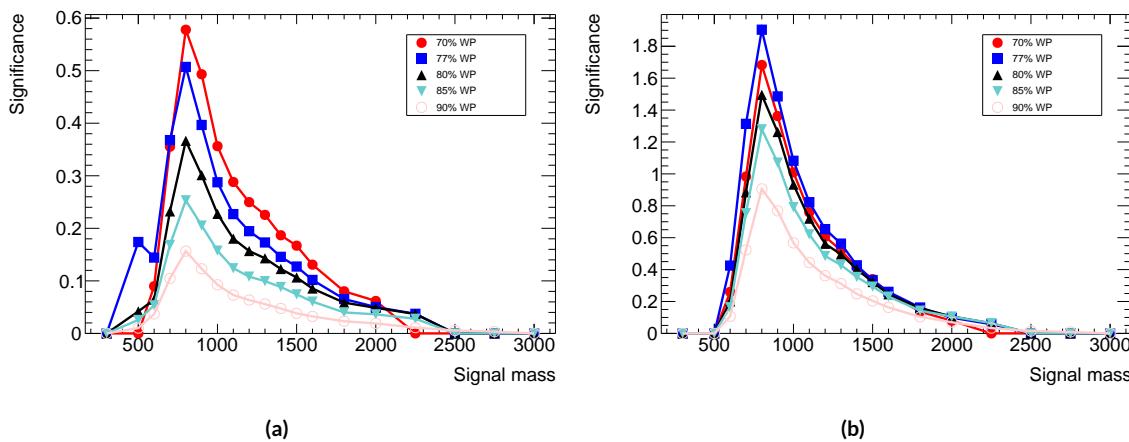


Figure A.1: Estimated significance as a function of signal mass for RSG $c = 1$ models in the $3b$ (a) and $4b$ (b) regions for different b -tagging efficiency working points

B

2600

2601

b-tagging performance at high p_T

2602 One of the limiting factors of the signal acceptance in the *FourB full* search at high resonance masses is
2603 the degradation of the *b*-tagging efficiency for high p_T jets. This appendix presents a study of the under-
2604 lying causes of this degradation.

2605 B.I MV2 ALGORITHM OVERVIEW

2606 The MV2 algorithm is a boosted decision tree incorporating twenty-four input variables constructed
2607 from three lower level input algorithms: IPxD, SV1, and JetFitter. IPxD uses the two and three dimen-
2608 sional impact parameter information of tracks in the jet to construct templates for light, charm, and bot-
2609 tom quarks and compute likelihood ratios. SV1 is a secondary vertex reconstruction algorithm. JetFitter
2610 attempts to fit to the full decay chain of the B hadron, looking for multiple decay vertices aligned along a
2611 single axis. Figure B.I summarizes the inputs to MV2.

IP2D and IP3D (6 inputs)	SV1 (8 inputs)	JetFitter (8 inputs)
$\log(p_b/p_u)$	Mass	Mass
$\log(p_b/p_c)$	Energy fraction	Energy fraction
$\log(p_c/p_u)$	# tracks at vertex	# vertices
	# 2 track vertices	# tracks at vertex
	Lxy	# 1 track vertices
	L3d	# 2 track vertices
	3D significance	3D significance
	ΔR	ΔR
Kinematics (2 inputs)		
	p_T	
	η	

Figure B.1: Summary of the inputs to the MV2 b -tagging algorithm

2612 **B.2 CHANGES IN MV2 SCORE AT HIGH p_T**

2613 The degradation of b -tagging at high p_T was studied in particular in the context of RSG models at high
 2614 mass. Figure B.2 shows the p_T of the leading track jet inside of the leading calorimeter jet in RSG events.
 2615 At high $m_{G_{KK}^*}$, the p_T spectrum of track jets is much harder than at lower masses due to the increased
 2616 Higgs p_T .

2617 Figure B.3 shows the MV2c20 algorithm score for the leading and subleading track jets inside of the
 2618 leading calorimeter jet. In both cases, it can be seen that at higher RSG masses the MV2 score shifts to-
 2619 wards more background like (negative) values. Additionally, this effect is more pronounced in the lead-
 2620 ing track jet than the subleading.

2621 To understand what is causing this change in the MV2c20 score, the same comparisons can be made
 2622 for the input variables of MV2c20. The focus in these comparisons will be on the leading track jet as
 2623 this is the one seen to have the largest difference in MV2 score. Figure B.4 shows the log likelihood ratio
 2624 $\log(p_b/p_u)$ from the IP3D (three dimensional impact parameter) algorithm. At higher masses, the IP3D
 2625 likelihood ratio distribution does become more background-like.

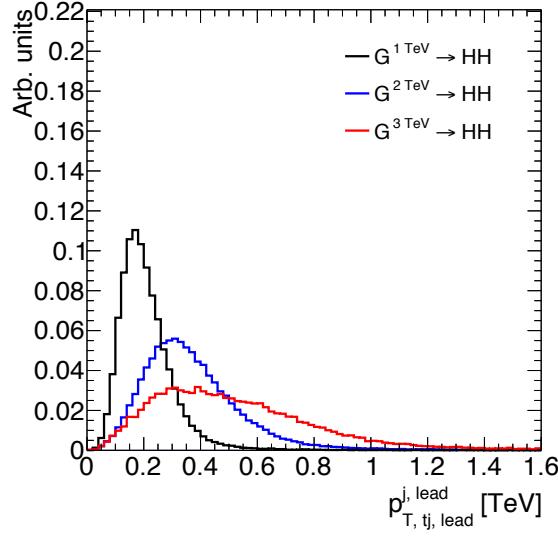


Figure B.2: p_T of the leading track jet in the leading calorimeter jet for different signal masses in RSG $c = 1$ models

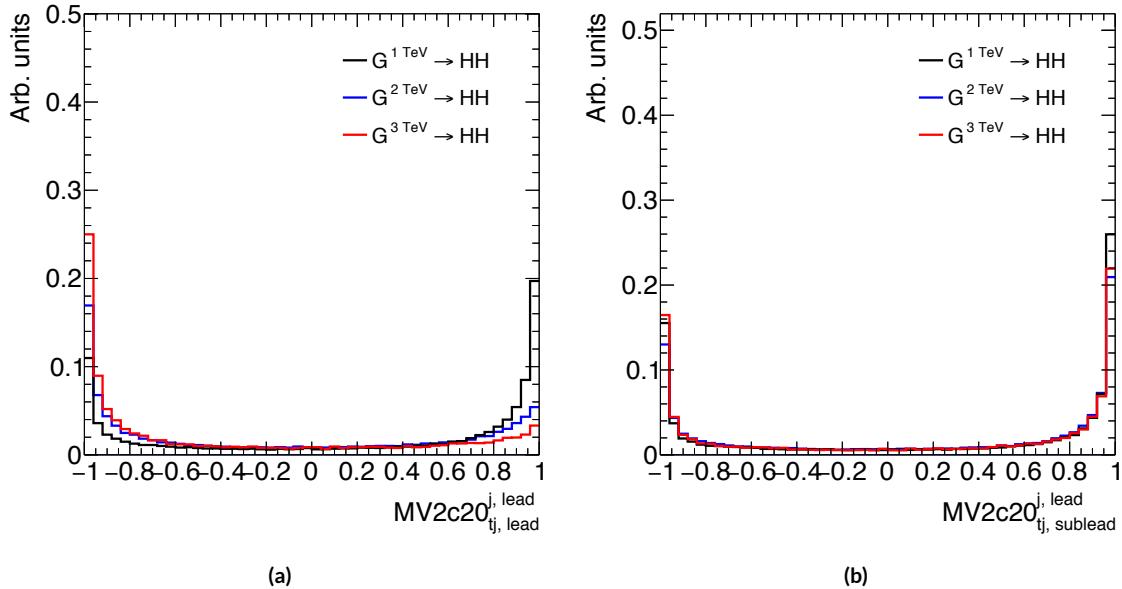


Figure B.3: MV2c20 score for the leading track jet (a) and subleading track jet (b) of the leading calorimeter jet for different signal masses in RSG $c = 1$ models

2626 Figure B.5 shows the mass and number of tracks at the secondary vertex computed by the SVI algo-
 2627 rithm. When there is no secondary vertex found, the algorithm assigns a default negative value for these
 2628 quantities. Both of these distributions show that there is a significantly larger fraction of jets where no
 2629 secondary vertex is found in the high mass samples compared to the $m_{G_{KK}^*} = 1$ TeV sample. The SVI

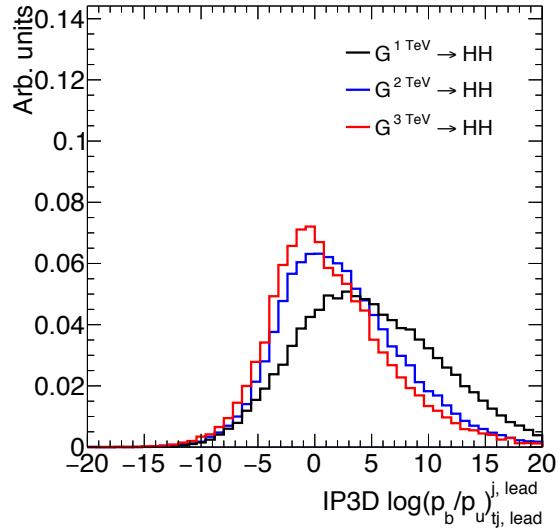


Figure B.4: IP3D log-likelihood ratio ($\log(p_b/p_u)$) of the leading track jet in the leading calorimeter jet for different signal masses in RSG $c = 1$ models

algorithm's inability to find a secondary vertex could be an important factor in the overall MV₂ score shift, as this eliminates eight of the input variables that would normally contribute information to the algorithm.

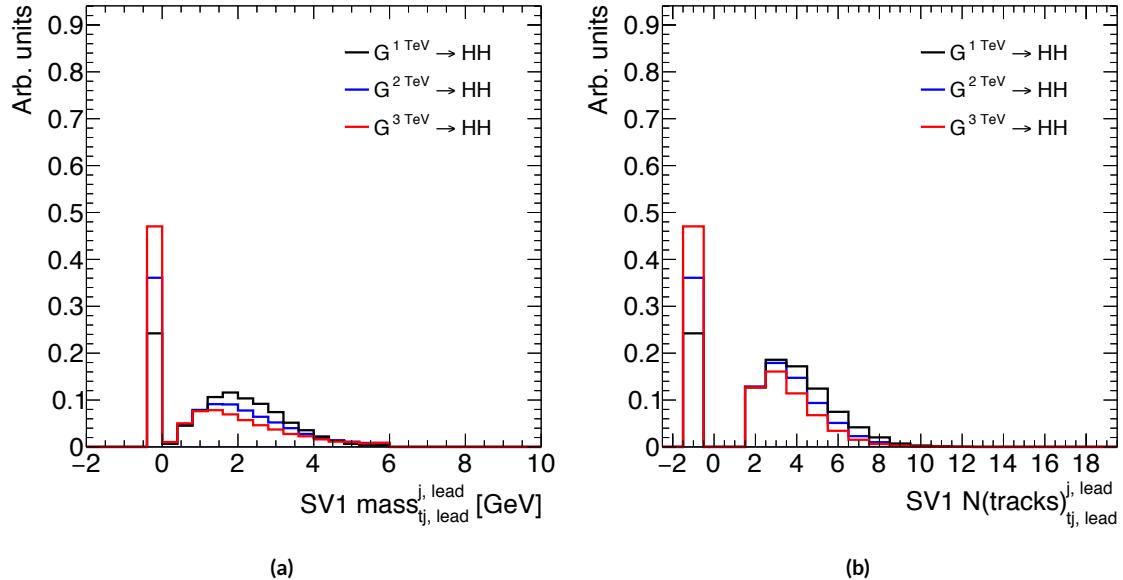


Figure B.5: Mass (a) and number of tracks (b) for the secondary vertices computed with the SV1 algorithm. When no secondary vertex is found, the quantities are assigned to default negative values.

2633 Figure B.6 shows the same quantities for the JetFitter algorithm. In this case, there is also a change in
 2634 the fraction of jets which have their secondary vertices successfully reconstructed, but this change is not
 2635 as drastic as that seen in SV1. There is also an increase in the number of jets which have high values of
 2636 mass.

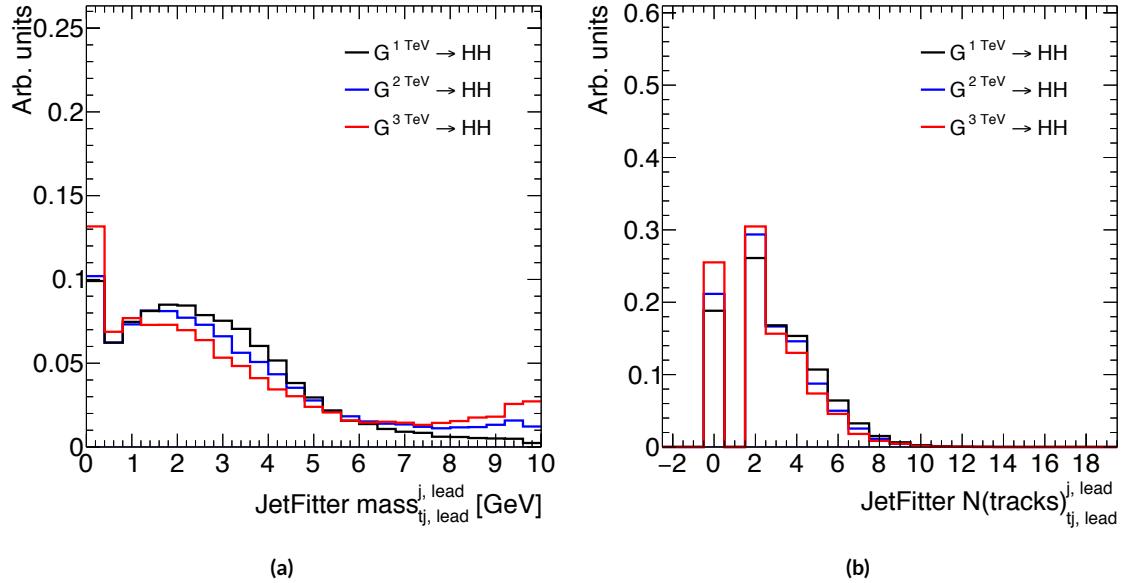


Figure B.6: Mass (a) and number of tracks (b) for vertices computed with the JetFitter algorithm. When no vertices are found, the quantities are assigned to default negative values.

2637 B.3 TAGGING EFFICIENCY BY INDIVIDUAL JET

2638 In the last section, the largest changes in MV2 score were seen for the leading track jet inside the leading
 2639 calorimeter jet. To confirm that the overall 4*b* tagging efficiency is indeed degrading because of degra-
 2640 dation of the leading track jet efficiency, the tagging efficiency for each individual jet as a function of mass
 2641 can be compared. This is shown in figure B.7. The figure shows that the leading jet tagging efficiency
 2642 in both calorimeter jets degrades heavily, while the sub-lead jet tagging efficiency remains relatively con-
 2643 stant.

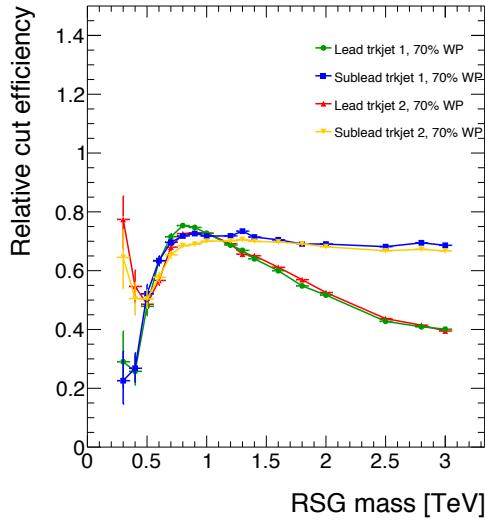


Figure B.7: MV2c20 b -tagging efficiency for each of the four track jets in the boosted $4b$ selection as a function of RSG mass for $c = 1$ models.

2644 B.4 EFFECT OF MULTIPLE b -QUARKS INSIDE ONE JET

2645 One hypothesis for why the efficiency of b -tagging the leading track jet degrades is that at high masses,
 2646 the b quarks get close enough together that both of them are inside of the leading track jet. Because MV2
 2647 is not tuned for tagging multiple b quarks inside one jet, the tagging efficiency could degrade.

2648 B.5 CHANGES IN TRACK QUALITY AT HIGH p_T

2649 To investigate the change in MV2 score further, individual track quantities within the jet can be com-
 2650 pared.

References

2651

- [1] K. A. Olive et al. Review of Particle Physics. *Chin. Phys.*, C38:090001, 2014. doi: 10.1088/1674-1137/38/9/090001.
- [2] LHC Higgs Cross Section Working Group, S. Heinemeyer, C. Mariotti, G. Passarino, and R. Tanaka (Eds.). Handbook of LHC Higgs Cross Sections: 3, Higgs Properties. 2013.
- [3] Kaustubh Agashe, Hooman Davoudiasl, Gilad Perez, and Amarjit Soni. Warped Gravitons at the LHC and Beyond. *Phys. Rev.*, D76:036006, 2007. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevD.76.036006.
- [4] Johan Alwall, Michel Herquet, Fabio Maltoni, Olivier Mattelaer, and Tim Stelzer. MadGraph 5:Going Beyond. *JHEP*, 1106:128, 2011. doi: 10.1007/JHEP06(2011)128.
- [5] Howard E. Haber and Oscar Stål. New LHC benchmarks for the \mathcal{CP} -conserving two-Higgs-doublet model. *Eur. Phys. J.*, C75(10):491, 2015. doi: 10.1140/epjc/s10052-015-3697-x.
- [6] Lyndon Evans. The Large Hadron Collider. In Holstein, BR and Haxton, WC and Jawahery, A, editor, *ANNUAL REVIEW OF NUCLEAR AND PARTICLE SCIENCE, VOL 61*, volume 61 of *Annual Review of Nuclear and Particle Science*, pages 435–466. 2011. doi: {10.1146/annurev-nucl-102010-130438}.
- [7] ATLAS Collaboration. The ATLAS experiment at the CERN Large Hadron Collider. *JINST*, 3:S08003, 2008. doi: 10.1088/1748-0221/3/08/S08003.
- [8] Track Reconstruction Performance of the ATLAS Inner Detector at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV. Technical Report ATL-PHYS-PUB-2015-018, CERN, Geneva, Jul 2015. URL <http://cds.cern.ch/record/2037683>.
- [9] ATLAS Collaboration. ATLAS Trigger Operations Public Results. 2015. URL <https://twiki.cern.ch/twiki/bin/view/AtlasPublic/TriggerOperationPublicResults>.
- [10] ATLAS Collaboration. ATLAS Luminosity Public Results, Run 1. 2012. URL <https://twiki.cern.ch/twiki/bin/view/AtlasPublic/LuminosityPublicResults>.
- [11] ATLAS Collaboration. ATLAS Luminosity Public Results, Run 2. 2015. URL <https://twiki.cern.ch/twiki/bin/view/AtlasPublic/LuminosityPublicResultsRun2>.

- 2677 [12] T Kawamoto, S Vlachos, L Pontecorvo, J Dubbert, G Mikenberg, P Iengo, C Dallapiccola,
2678 C Amelung, L Levinson, R Richter, and D Lellouch. New Small Wheel Technical Design Re-
2679 port. Technical Report CERN-LHCC-2013-006. ATLAS-TDR-020, CERN, Geneva, Jun 2013.
2680 URL <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1552862>. ATLAS New Small Wheel Technical Design
2681 Report.
- 2682 [13] Joao Pequenao and Paul Schaffner. An computer generated image representing how ATLAS
2683 detects particles. Jan 2013. URL <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1505342>.
- 2684 [14] Electron efficiency measurements with the ATLAS detector using the 2012 LHC proton-proton
2685 collision data. Technical Report ATLAS-CONF-2014-032, CERN, Geneva, Jun 2014. URL
2686 <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1706245>.
- 2687 [15] Georges Aad et al. Electron and photon energy calibration with the ATLAS detector using LHC
2688 Run 1 data. *Eur. Phys. J.*, C74(10):3071, 2014. doi: 10.1140/epjc/s10052-014-3071-4.
- 2689 [16] Georges Aad et al. Measurement of the muon reconstruction performance of the ATLAS detec-
2690 tor using 2011 and 2012 LHC proton–proton collision data. *Eur. Phys. J.*, C74(11):3130, 2014. doi:
2691 10.1140/epjc/s10052-014-3130-x.
- 2692 [17] Monte Carlo Calibration and Combination of In-situ Measurements of Jet Energy Scale, Jet En-
2693 ergy Resolution and Jet Mass in ATLAS. Technical Report ATLAS-CONF-2015-037, CERN,
2694 Geneva, Aug 2015. URL <http://cds.cern.ch/record/2044941>.
- 2695 [18] Georges Aad et al. Performance of *b*-Jet Identification in the ATLAS Experiment. 2015.
- 2696 [19] Expected performance of the ATLAS *b*-tagging algorithms in Run-2. Technical Report ATL-
2697 PHYS-PUB-2015-022, CERN, Geneva, Jul 2015. URL <http://cds.cern.ch/record/2037697>.
- 2698 [20] Performance of Missing Transverse Momentum Reconstruction in ATLAS studied in Proton-
2699 Proton Collisions recorded in 2012 at 8 TeV. Technical Report ATLAS-CONF-2013-082, CERN,
2700 Geneva, Aug 2013. URL <http://cds.cern.ch/record/1570993>.
- 2702 [21] ATLAS Collaboration. Observation and measurement of Higgs boson decays to WW* with the
2703 ATLAS detector. *Phys. Rev. D*, 92(012006), 2015.
- 2704 [22] Georges Aad et al. Observation of a new particle in the search for the Standard Model Higgs
2705 boson with the ATLAS detector at the LHC. *Phys. Lett.*, B716:1–29, 2012. doi: 10.1016/j.physletb.
2706 2012.08.020.
- 2707 [23] Georges Aad et al. Measurements of the Higgs boson production and decay rates and coupling
2708 strengths using pp collision data at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ and 8 TeV in the ATLAS experiment. *Eur. Phys. J.*,
2709 C76(1):6, 2016. doi: 10.1140/epjc/s10052-015-3769-y.

- 2710 [24] W.J. Stirling. 7/8 and 13/8 TeV LHC luminosity ratios. 2013. URL http://www.hep.ph.ic.ac.uk/~wstirlin/plots/lhclumi7813_2013_v0.pdf.
- 2711
- 2712 [25] J Alison. Experimental Studies of hh. Oct 2014. URL <http://cds.cern.ch/record/1952581>.
- 2713
- 2714 [26] Baojia (Tony) Tong. Private communication.
- 2715 [27] Flavor Tagging with Track Jets in Boosted Topologies with the ATLAS Detector. Technical Report ATL-PHYS-PUB-2014-013, CERN, Geneva, Aug 2014. URL <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1750681>.
- 2716
- 2717
- 2718 [28] Search for pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state using proton-proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector. Technical Report ATLAS-CONF-2016-017, CERN, Geneva, Mar 2016. URL <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2141006>.
- 2719
- 2720
- 2721 [29] Christopher G. Tully. *Elementary particle physics in a nutshell*. 2011.
- 2722 [30]
- 2723 [31] Mike Lamont for the LHC team. The First Years of LHC Operation for Luminosity Production. International Particle Accelerator Conference, 2013. URL https://accelconf.web.cern.ch/accelconf/IPAC2013/talks/moyab101_talk.pdf.
- 2724
- 2725
- 2726 [32] Paul Collier for the LHC team. LHC Machine Status. CERN Resource Review Board, 2015.
- 2727 URL <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2063924/files/CERN-RRB-2015-119.PDF>.
- 2728
- 2729 [33] Qi Zeng. Private communication.
- 2730
- 2731 [34] Serguei Chatrchyan et al. Observation of a new boson at a mass of 125 GeV with the CMS experiment at the LHC. *Phys. Lett.*, B716:30–61, 2012. doi: 10.1016/j.physletb.2012.08.021.
- 2732
- 2733
- 2734 [35] David Griffiths. *Introduction to elementary particles*. 2008.
- 2735
- 2736 [36] F. Halzen and Alan D. Martin. *QUARKS AND LEPTONS: AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE IN MODERN PARTICLE PHYSICS*. 1984. ISBN 0471887412, 9780471887416.
- 2737
- 2738 [37] Matthew D. Schwartz. *Quantum Field Theory and the Standard Model*. Cambridge University Press, 2014. ISBN 1107034736, 9781107034730. URL <http://www.cambridge.org/us/academic/subjects/physics/theoretical-physics-and-mathematical-physics/quantum-field-theory-and-standard-model>.
- 2739
- 2740 [38] S. Dawson. Introduction to electroweak symmetry breaking. In *High energy physics and cosmology. Proceedings, Summer School, Trieste, Italy, June 29-July 17, 1998*, pages 1–83, 1998. URL <http://alice.cern.ch/format/showfull?sysnb=0301862>.

- 2741 [39] S. L. Glashow. Partial Symmetries of Weak Interactions. *Nucl. Phys.*, 22:579–588, 1961. doi:
2742 10.1016/0029-5582(61)90469-2.
- 2743 [40] Steven Weinberg. A Model of Leptons. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 19:1264–1266, 1967. doi: 10.1103/
2744 PhysRevLett.19.1264.
- 2745 [41] A. Salam. *Elementary Particle Theory*. Almqvist and Wiksell, Stockholm, 1968.
- 2746 [42] J. Iliopoulos S.L. Glashow and L. Maiani. D2:1285, 1970.
- 2747 [43] R. Keith Ellis, W. James Stirling, and B. R. Webber. QCD and collider physics. *Camb. Monogr.*
2748 *Part. Phys. Nucl. Phys. Cosmol.*, 8:1–435, 1996.
- 2749 [44] P. W. Higgs. Broken symmetries and the masses of gauge bosons. 13:508, 1964.
- 2750 [45] P. W. Higgs. Spontaneous symmetry breakdown without massless bosons. 145:1156, 1966.
- 2751 [46] F. Englert and R. Brout. Broken symmetry and the mass of gauge vector mesons. 13:321, 1964.
- 2752 [47] G. S. Guralnik, C. R. Hagen, and T. W. .B. Kibble. Global conservation laws and massless parti-
2753 cles. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 13:585, 1964. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevLett.13.585.
- 2754 [48] Matthew J. Dolan, Christoph Englert, and Michael Spannowsky. New Physics in LHC Higgs
2755 boson pair production. *Phys. Rev.*, D87(5):055002, 2013. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevD.87.055002.
- 2756 [49] Roberto Contino, Margherita Ghezzi, Mauro Moretti, Giuliano Panico, Fulvio Piccinini, and
2757 Andrea Wulzer. Anomalous Couplings in Double Higgs Production. *JHEP*, 08:154, 2012. doi:
2758 10.1007/JHEP08(2012)154.
- 2759 [50] R. Grober and M. Muhlleitner. Composite Higgs Boson Pair Production at the LHC. *JHEP*, 06:
2760 020, 2011. doi: 10.1007/JHEP06(2011)020.
- 2761 [51] Lisa Randall and Raman Sundrum. A Large mass hierarchy from a small extra dimension. *Phys.*
2762 *Rev. Lett.*, 83:3370–3373, 1999. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevLett.83.3370.
- 2763 [52] A. Liam Fitzpatrick, Jared Kaplan, Lisa Randall, and Lian-Tao Wang. Searching for the Kaluza-
2764 Klein Graviton in Bulk RS Models. *JHEP*, 09:013, 2007. doi: 10.1088/1126-6708/2007/09/013.
- 2765 [53] Julien Baglio, Otto Eberhardt, Ulrich Nierste, and Martin Wiebusch. Benchmarks for Higgs Pair
2766 Production and Heavy Higgs boson Searches in the Two-Higgs-Doublet Model of Type II. *Phys.*
2767 *Rev.*, D90(1):015008, 2014. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevD.90.015008.
- 2768 [54] G. C. Branco, P. M. Ferreira, L. Lavoura, M. N. Rebelo, Marc Sher, and Joao P. Silva. Theory
2769 and phenomenology of two-Higgs-doublet models. *Phys. Rept.*, 516:1–102, 2012. doi: 10.1016/j.
2770 physrep.2012.02.002.

- 2771 [55] Jose M. No and Michael Ramsey-Musolf. Probing the Higgs Portal at the LHC Through Reso-
2772 nant di-Higgs Production. *Phys. Rev.*, D89(9):095031, 2014. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevD.89.095031.
- 2773 [56] Lyndon R Evans and Philip Bryant. LHC Machine. *J. Instrum.*, 3:S08001, 164 p, 2008. URL
2774 <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1129806>. This report is an abridged version of the LHC
2775 Design Report (CERN-2004-003).
- 2776 [57] CMS Collaboration. The cms experiment at the cern lhc. *Journal of Instrumentation*, 3(08):
2777 S08004, 2008. URL <http://stacks.iop.org/1748-0221/3/i=08/a=S08004>.
- 2778 [58] LHCb Collaoration. The LHCb Detector at the LHC. *JINST*, 3:S08005, 2008. doi: 10.1088/
2779 1748-0221/3/08/S08005.
- 2780 [59] ALICE Collaboration. The alice experiment at the cern lhc. *Journal of Instrumentation*, 3(08):
2781 S08002, 2008. URL <http://stacks.iop.org/1748-0221/3/i=08/a=S08002>.
- 2782 [60] ATLAS Collaboration. Luminosity Determination in pp Collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV Using the
2783 ATLAS Detector at the LHC. *Eur. Phys. J.*, C 71:1630, 2011. doi: 10.1140/epjc/s10052-011-1630-5.
- 2784 [61] M Capeans, G Darbo, K Einsweiller, M Elsing, T Flick, M Garcia-Sciveres, C Gemme, H Perneg-
2785 ger, O Rohne, and R Vuillermet. ATLAS Insertable B-Layer Technical Design Report. Tech-
2786 nical Report CERN-LHCC-2010-013, ATLAS-TDR-19, CERN, Geneva, Sep 2010. URL
2787 <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1291633>.
- 2788 [62] Y Giomataris, Ph. Rebourgeard, J.P. Robert, and G. Charpak. Micromegas: a high-granularity
2789 position-sensitive gaseous detector for high particle-flux environments. *Nuclear Instruments
2790 and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and As-
2791 sociated Equipment*, 376(1):29 – 35, 1996. ISSN 0168-9002. doi: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0168-9002\(96\)00175-1](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0168-9002(96)00175-1). URL <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/0168900296001751>.
- 2793 [63] T Alexopoulos, J. Burnens, R. de Oliveira, G. Glonti, O. Pizzirusso, V. Polychronakos,
2794 G. Sekhniaidze, G. Tsipolitis, and J. Wotschack. A spark-resistant bulk-micromegas chamber for
2795 high-rate applications. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Acceler-
2796 ators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 640(1):110 – 118, 2011. ISSN 0168-9002.
2797 doi: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2011.03.025>. URL <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900211005869>.
- 2799 [64] Improved electron reconstruction in ATLAS using the Gaussian Sum Filter-based model for
2800 bremsstrahlung. Technical Report ATLAS-CONF-2012-047, CERN, Geneva, May 2012. URL
2801 <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1449796>.

- 2803 [65] W Lampl, S Laplace, D Lelas, P Loch, H Ma, S Menke, S Rajagopalan, D Rousseau, S Snyder,
 2804 and G Unal. Calorimeter Clustering Algorithms: Description and Performance. Technical
 2805 Report ATL-LARG-PUB-2008-002, ATL-COM-LARG-2008-003, CERN, Geneva, Apr 2008.
 2806 URL <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1099735>.
- 2807 [66] Georges Aad et al. Topological cell clustering in the ATLAS calorimeters and its performance in
 2808 LHC Run 1. 2016.
- 2809 [67] Matteo Cacciari, Gavin P. Salam, and Gregory Soyez. The Anti-k(t) jet clustering algorithm.
 2810 *JHEP*, 04:063, 2008. doi: 10.1088/1126-6708/2008/04/063.
- 2811 [68] Georges Aad et al. Performance of Missing Transverse Momentum Reconstruction in Proton-
 2812 Proton Collisions at 7 TeV with ATLAS. *Eur. Phys. J.*, C72:1844, 2012. doi: 10.1140/epjc/
 2813 s10052-011-1844-6.
- 2814 [69] Aaron James Armbruster. Discovery of a Higgs Boson with the ATLAS detector. 2013. CERN-
 2815 THESIS-2013-047.
- 2816 [70] G. Cowan, K. Cranmer, E. Gross, and O. Vitells. Asymptotic formulae for likelihood-based tests
 2817 of new physics. *Eur. Phys. J.*, C 71:1554, 2011. doi: 10.1140/epjc/s10052-011-1554-0.
- 2818 [71] ATLAS Collaboration. Limits on the production of the Standard Model Higgs Boson in pp
 2819 collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV with the ATLAS detector. *Eur. Phys. J.*, C 71:1728, 2011. doi: 10.1140/
 2820 epjc/s10052-011-1728-9.
- 2821 [72] ATLAS Collaboration. Performance of the ATLAS muon trigger in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 8$
 2822 TeV. *Eur. Phys. J. C*, (arXiv:1408.3179. CERN-PH-EP-2014-154):75. 19 p, Aug 2014. URL <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1749694>.
- 2823
- 2824 [73] ATLAS collaboration. Electron trigger performance in 2012 ATLAS data, 2015. ATLAS-COM-
 2825 DAQ-2015-091.
- 2826 [74] Paolo Nason. A new method for combining NLO QCD with shower Monte Carlo algorithms.
 2827 *JHEP*, 11:040, 2004.
- 2828 [75] B. P. Kersevan and E. Richter-Was. The Monte Carlo event generator AcerMC version 2.0 with
 2829 interfaces to PYTHIA 6.2 and HERWIG 6.5. 2004.
- 2830 [76] Nikolas Kauer and Giampiero Passarino. Inadequacy of zero-width approximation for a light
 2831 Higgs boson signal. 2012.
- 2832 [77] T. Gleisberg, Stefan. Hoeche, F. Krauss, M. Schonherr, S. Schumann, et al. Event generation with
 2833 SHERPA 1.1. *JHEP*, 0902:007, 2009. doi: 10.1088/1126-6708/2009/02/007.

- 2834 [78] Michelangelo L. Mangano et al. ALPGEN, a generator for hard multiparton processes in
 2835 hadronic collisions. *JHEP*, 0307:001, 2003. doi: 10.1088/1126-6708/2003/07/001.
- 2836 [79] Torbjorn Sjostrand, Stephen Mrenna, and Peter Z. Skands. PYTHIA 6.4 Physics and Manual.
 2837 *JHEP*, 0605:026, 2006. doi: 10.1088/1126-6708/2006/05/026.
- 2838 [80] Torbjorn Sjostrand, Stephen Mrenna, and Peter Z. Skands. A Brief Introduction to PYTHIA 8.1.
 2839 *Comput.Phys.Commun.*, 178:852–867, 2008. doi: 10.1016/j.cpc.2008.01.036.
- 2840 [81] G. Corcella et al. HERWIG 6: An event generator for hadron emission reactions with interfering
 2841 gluons (including super-symmetric processes) . *JHEP*, 01:010, 2001. doi: 10.1088/1126-6708/2001/
 2842 01/010.
- 2843 [82] J. M. Butterworth, Jeffrey R. Forshaw, and M. H. Seymour. Multiparton interactions in photo-
 2844 production at HERA. *Z. Phys.*, C 72:637, 1996. doi: 10.1007/s002880050286.
- 2845 [83] Jun Gao, Marco Guzzi, Joey Huston, Hung-Liang Lai, Zhao Li, et al. The CT10 NNLO Global
 2846 Analysis of QCD. *Phys.Rev.*, D89:033009, 2014. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevD.89.033009.
- 2847 [84] P. M. Nadolsky. Implications of CTEQ global analysis for collider observables. *Phys. Rev.*, D 78:
 2848 013004, 2008. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevD.78.013004.
- 2849 [85] A. Sherstnev and R. S. Thorne. Parton distributions for the LHC. *Eur. Phys. J.*, C 55:553, 2009.
 2850 doi: 10.1140/epjc/s10052-008-0610-x.
- 2851 [86] S. Agostinelli et al. GEANT4, a simulation toolkit. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A 506:250, 2003. doi:
 2852 10.1016/S0168-9002(03)01368-8.
- 2853 [87] I. Stewart and F. Tackmann. Theory uncertainties for Higgs mass and other searches using jet
 2854 bins. *Phys. Rev.*, D 85:034011, 2012. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevD.85.034011.
- 2855 [88] ATLAS Collaboration. Luminosity Determination in pp Collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ TeV Using the
 2856 ATLAS Detector at the LHC. *Eur. Phys. J.*, C 71:1630, 2011. doi: 10.1140/epjc/s10052-011-1630-5.
- 2857 [89] Jet energy scale and its systematic uncertainty in proton-proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 7$ tev with
 2858 atlas 2011 data. *ATLAS-CONF-2013-004*, 2013.
- 2859 [90] Calibrating the b -tag efficiency and mistag rate in 35 pb^{-1} of data with the atlas detector.
 2860 *ATLAS-CONF-2011-089*, 2011.
- 2861 [91] ATLAS Collaboration. Measurement of the b -tag Efficiency in a Sample of Jets Containing
 2862 Muons with 5 fb^{-1} of Data from the ATLAS Detector. *ATLAS-CONF-2012-043*, 2012. URL
 2863 <http://cdsweb.cern.ch/record/1435197>.

- 2864 [92] J. Alwall et al. The automated computation of tree-level and next-to-leading order differential
 2865 cross sections, and their matching to parton shower simulations. *JHEP*, 07:079, 2014.
- 2866 [93] Richard D. Ball et al. Parton distributions with LHC data. *Nucl. Phys. B*, 867:244, 2013.
- 2867 [94] ATLAS Collaboration. ATLAS Run 1 Pythia8 tunes. (ATL-PHYS-PUB-2014-021), Nov 2014.
 2868 URL <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1966419>.
- 2869 [95] M. Bahr et al. Herwig++ Physics and Manual. *Eur. Phys. J. C*, 58:639–707, 2008. doi: 10.1140/
 2870 epjc/s10052-008-0798-9.
- 2871 [96] Stefan Gieseke, Christian Rohr, and Andrzej Siódak. Colour reconnections in Herwig++. *Eur.*
 2872 *Phys. J. C*, 72:2225, 2012. doi: 10.1140/epjc/s10052-012-2225-5.
- 2873 [97] Simone Alioli, Paolo Nason, Carlo Oleari, and Emanuele Re. A general framework for imple-
 2874 menting NLO calculations in shower Monte Carlo programs: the POWHEG BOX. *JHEP*, 06:
 2875 043, 2010.
- 2876 [98] Peter Zeiler Skands. Tuning Monte Carlo Generators: The Perugia Tunes. *Phys. Rev. D*, 82:
 2877 074018, 2010. doi: 10.1103/PhysRevD.82.074018.
- 2878 [99] Michal Czakon and Alexander Mitov. Top++: A Program for the Calculation of the Top-Pair
 2879 Cross-Section at Hadron Colliders. 2011.
- 2880 [100] D. Krohn, J. Thaler, and L.-T. Wang. Jet Trimming. *JHEP*, 02:084, 2010. doi: 10.1007/
 2881 JHEP02(2010)084.
- 2882 [101] ATLAS Collaboration. Identification of Boosted, Hadronically Decaying W Bosons and Com-
 2883 parisons with ATLAS Data Taken at $\sqrt{s} = 8$ TeV. 2015.
- 2884 [102] Expected Performance of Boosted Higgs ($\rightarrow b\bar{b}$) Boson Identification with the ATLAS Detector
 2885 at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV. Technical Report ATL-PHYS-PUB-2015-035, CERN, Geneva, Aug 2015. URL
 2886 <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2042155>.
- 2887 [103] Matteo Cacciari and Gavin P. Salam. Pileup subtraction using jet areas. *Phys. Lett. B*, 659:119,
 2888 2008. doi: 10.1016/j.physletb.2007.09.077.
- 2889 [104] ATLAS Collaboration. Identification of boosted, hadronically-decaying W and Z bosons in
 2890 $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV Monte Carlo Simulations for ATLAS. (ATL-PHYS-PUB-2015-033), Aug 2015.
 2891 URL <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2041461>.
- 2892 [105] ATLAS Collaboration. Calibration of b -tagging using dileptonic top pair events in a combina-
 2893 torial likelihood approach with the ATLAS experiment. (ATLAS-CONF-2014-004), 2014. URL
 2894 <http://cds.cern.ch/record/1664335>.

- 2895 [106] ATLAS Collaboration. Performance of b -Jet Identification in the ATLAS Experiment. 2015.
- 2896 [107] Alexander L. Read. Presentation of search results: The CL(s) technique. *J. Phys. G*, 28:2693,
2897 2002. doi: 10.1088/0954-3899/28/10/313.
- 2898 [108] Glen Cowan, Eilam Gross. Discovery significance with statistical uncertainty in the background
2899 estimate. 2008. URL <http://www.pp.rhul.ac.uk/~cowan/stat/notes/SigCalcNote.pdf>.
- 2900



THIS THESIS WAS TYPESET using L^AT_EX, originally developed by Leslie Lamport and based on Donald Knuth's T_EX.

The body text is set in 11 point Egenolff-Berner Garamond, a revival of Claude Garamont's humanist typeface. The above illustration, *Science Experiment 02*, was created by Ben Schlitter and released under CC BY-NC-ND 3.0. A template that can be used to format a PhD dissertation with this look & feel has been released under the permissive AGPL license, and can be found online at github.com/asm-products/Dissertate or from its lead author, Jordan Suchow, at suchow@post.harvard.edu.